

Package ‘Giotto’

December 5, 2019

Title Spatial single-cell transcriptomics pipeline.

Version 0.1.3

Description Pipeline to process, analyze and visualize (spatial) single-cell expression data.

License MIT + file LICENSE

Encoding UTF-8

LazyData true

RoxygenNote 7.0.1

Depends data.table (>= 1.12.2),
ggplot2 (>= 3.1.1),
base (>= 3.5.1),
utils (>= 3.5.1),
R (>= 3.5.1)

Imports Rtsne (>= 0.15),
uwot (>= 0.0.0.9010),
multinet (>= 3.0.2),
FactoMineR (>= 1.34),
factoextra (>= 1.0.5),
cowplot (>= 0.9.4),
grDevices,
RColorBrewer (>= 1.1-2),
jackstraw (>= 1.3),
dbscan (>= 1.1-3),
ggalluvial (>= 0.9.1),
scales (>= 1.0.0),
ComplexHeatmap (>= 1.20.0),
qvalue (>= 2.14.1),
lfa (>= 1.12.0),
igraph (>= 1.2.4.1),
plotly,
reticulate,
magrittr,
limma,
ggdendro,
smfishHmrf,
matrixStats (>= 0.55.0),
IRanges,
devtools

Suggests knitr,
 rmarkdown,
 MAST,
 scran (>= 1.10.1),
 png,
 tiff,
 biomaRt

biocViews

VignetteBuilder knitr

Remotes lambdamoses/smfishhmr-f-r

R topics documented:

addCellMetadata	6
addCellStatistics	7
addGeneMetadata	8
addGeneStatistics	9
addHMRF	10
addNetworkLayout	10
addStatistics	11
adjustGiottoMatrix	12
aes_string2	13
allCellCellcommunicationsScores	13
all_plots_save_function	14
annotateGiotto	15
annotateSpatialNetwork	16
annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_2D	17
annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_3D	17
average_gene_gene_expression_in_groups	18
binGetSpatialGenes	18
calculateHVG	20
calculateMetaTable	21
calculateMetaTableCells	22
calculate_spatial_genes_python	23
cellProximityBarplot	24
cellProximityEnrichment	25
cellProximityHeatmap	26
cellProximityNetwork	27
cellProximitySpatPlot	28
cellProximitySpatPlot2D	30
cellProximitySpatPlot3D	32
cellProximityVisPlot	34
cellProximityVisPlot_2D_ggplot	36
cellProximityVisPlot_2D_plotly	38
cellProximityVisPlot_3D_plotly	39
changeGiottoInstructions	41
clusterCells	42
combineMetadata	44
convertEnsemblToGeneSymbol	45
createGiottoInstructions	45

createGiottoObject	46
createHeatmap_DT	48
createNearestNetwork	49
createSpatialEnrich	51
createSpatialGrid	52
createSpatialGrid_2D	53
createSpatialGrid_3D	54
createSpatialNetwork	55
create_average_detection_DT	56
create_average_DT	56
create_cell_type_random_cell_IDs	57
create_cluster_matrix	58
create_dimObject	58
decide_cluster_order	59
detectSpatialPatterns	60
dimCellPlot	61
dimCellPlot2D	63
dimGenePlot	66
dimGenePlot2D	68
dimGenePlot3D	70
dimPlot2D	71
dimPlot3D	75
direction_test_CPG	77
doHclust	77
doHMRF	78
doKmeans	80
doLeidenCluster	81
doLeidenSubCluster	82
doLouvainCluster	84
doLouvainCluster_community	85
doLouvainCluster_multinet	86
doLouvainSubCluster	87
doLouvainSubCluster_community	89
doLouvainSubCluster_multinet	90
doRandomWalkCluster	92
doSNNCluster	93
dt_to_matrix	94
exportGiottoViewer	94
exprOnlyCellCellcommunicationScores	95
extended_gini_fun	96
extractNearestNetwork	97
fDataDT	97
filterCombinations	98
filterCPGscores	99
filterDistributions	100
filterGiotto	101
findGiniMarkers	102
findGiniMarkers_one_vs_all	103
findMarkers	104
findMarkers_one_vs_all	105
findMastMarkers	106
findMastMarkers_one_vs_all	107

findScranMarkers	108
findScranMarkers_one_vs_all	109
find_grid_2D	110
find_grid_3D	110
find_grid_x	111
find_grid_y	111
find_grid_z	111
fish_function	111
fish_function2	112
FSV_show	112
GenePattern_show	113
general_save_function	114
get10Xmatrix	115
getCellProximityGeneScores	115
getClusterSimilarity	117
getDendrogramSplits	118
getDistinctColors	119
getGeneToGeneScores	119
get_cell_to_cell_sorted_name_conversion	120
get_interaction_gene_enrichment	121
get_specific_interaction_gene_enrichment	121
ggplot_save_function	122
giotto-class	123
hyperGeometricEnrich	124
iterCluster	125
iterLeidenCluster	126
iterLouvainCluster	128
iterLouvainCluster_community	129
iterLouvainCluster_multinet	131
kmeans_binarize	132
loadHMRP	132
makeSignMatrixPAGE	133
makeSignMatrixRank	134
make_simulated_network	134
mergeClusters	135
mygini_fun	136
nnDT_to_kNN	136
node_clusters	137
normalizeGiotto	137
OR_function2	138
PAGEEnrich	139
pDataDT	140
plotCPGscores	140
plotGTGscores	141
plotHeatmap	143
plotly_axis_scale_2D	144
plotly_axis_scale_3D	145
plotly_grid	146
plotly_network	146
plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap	147
plotMetaDataHeatmap	149
plotPCA	151

plotPCA_2D	152
plotPCA_3D	154
plotTSNE	156
plotTSNE_2D	157
plotTSNE_3D	159
plotUMAP	161
plotUMAP_2D	162
plotUMAP_3D	164
plot_network_layer_ggplot	166
plot_point_layer_ggplot	166
plot_spat_point_layer_ggplot	168
print.giotto	170
rankEnrich	171
rank_binarize	172
readGiottoInstructions	172
removeCellAnnotation	173
removeGeneAnnotation	173
replaceGiottoInstructions	174
runPCA	174
runTSNE	175
runUMAP	177
selectPatternGenes	178
select_expression_values	179
show,giotto-method	179
showClusterDendrogram	180
showClusterHeatmap	181
showCPGscores	182
showGeneExpressionProximityScore	183
showGiottoInstructions	184
showGTGscores	184
showIntExpressionProximityScore	185
showPattern	186
showPattern2D	187
showPattern3D	188
showPatternGenes	190
showProcessingSteps	191
showTopGeneToGene	191
signPCA	192
spatCellPlot	193
spatCellPlot2D	196
spatDimCellPlot	198
spatDimCellPlot2D	202
spatDimGenePlot	206
spatDimGenePlot2D	208
spatDimGenePlot3D	211
spatDimPlot	213
spatDimPlot2D	217
spatDimPlot3D	220
spatGenePlot	224
spatGenePlot2D	226
spatGenePlot3D	228
Spatial_AEH	229

Spatial_DE	230
spatPlot	231
spatPlot2D	234
spatPlot3D	237
specificCellCellcommunicationScores	239
split_dendrogram_in_two	240
stitchFieldCoordinates	240
subClusterCells	241
subsetGiotto	243
subsetGiottoLocs	243
viewHMRFresults	244
viewHMRFresults2D	245
viewHMRFresults3D	246
violinPlot	247
visDimGenePlot	248
visDimGenePlot_2D_ggplot	250
visDimGenePlot_3D_plotly	252
visDimPlot	253
visDimPlot_2D_ggplot	255
visDimPlot_2D_plotly	257
visDimPlot_3D_plotly	259
visForceLayoutPlot	260
visGenePlot	262
visGenePlot_2D_ggplot	264
visGenePlot_3D_plotly	266
visPlot	267
visPlot_2D_ggplot	270
visPlot_2D_plotly	272
visPlot_3D_plotly	273
visSpatDimGenePlot	275
visSpatDimGenePlot_2D	278
visSpatDimGenePlot_3D	280
visSpatDimPlot	282
visSpatDimPlot_2D	285
visSpatDimPlot_3D	287
writeHMRFresults	289
write_giotto_viewer_annotation	290
write_giotto_viewer_dim_reduction	290

Index**292**

addCellMetadata

*addCellMetadata***Description**

adds cell metadata to the giotto object

Usage

```
addCellMetadata(
  gobject,
  new_metadata,
  by_column = FALSE,
  column_cell_ID = NULL
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>new_metadata</code>	new cell metadata to use (data.table, data.frame, ...)
<code>by_column</code>	merge metadata based on cell_ID column in pDataDT (default = FALSE)
<code>column_cell_ID</code>	column name of new metadata to use if <code>by_column = TRUE</code>

Details

You can add additional cell metadata in two manners: 1. Provide a data.table or data.frame with cell annotations in the same order as the cell_ID column in pDataDT(gobject) 2. Provide a data.table or data.frame with cell annotations and specify which column contains the cell IDs, these cell IDs need to match with the cell_ID column in pDataDT(gobject)

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
addCellMetadata(gobject)
```

<code>addCellStatistics</code>	<i>addCellStatistics</i>
--------------------------------	--------------------------

Description

adds cells statistics to the giotto object

Usage

```
addCellStatistics(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  detection_threshold = 0,
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

gobject giotto object
expression_values expression values to use
detection_threshold detection threshold to consider a gene detected
return_gobject boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

Details

This function will add the following statistics to cell metadata:

- **nr_genes**: Denotes in how many genes are detected per cell
- **perc_genes**: Denotes what percentage of genes is detected per cell
- **total_expr**: Shows the total sum of gene expression per cell

Value

giotto object if **return_gobject** = TRUE

Examples

```
addCellStatistics(gobject)
```

addGeneMetadata	<i>addGeneMetadata</i>
-----------------	------------------------

Description

adds gene metadata to the giotto object

Usage

```
addGeneMetadata(gobject, new_metadata, by_column = F, column_gene_ID = NULL)
```

Arguments

gobject giotto object
new_metadata new metadata to use
by_column merge metadata based on gene_ID column in fDataDT
column_cell_ID column name of new metadata to use if **by_column** = TRUE

Details

You can add additional gene metadata in two manners: 1. Provide a data.table or data.frame with gene annotations in the same order as the gene_ID column in fDataDT(gobject) 2. Provide a data.table or data.frame with gene annotations and specify which column contains the gene IDs, these gene IDs need to match with the gene_ID column in fDataDT(gobject)

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
addGeneMetadata(gobject)
```

addGeneStatistics	<i>addGeneStatistics</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

adds gene statistics to the giotto object

Usage

```
addGeneStatistics(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  detection_threshold = 0,
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

gobject giotto object
 expression_values expression values to use
 detection_threshold detection threshold to consider a gene detected
 return_gobject boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

Details

This function will add the following statistics to gene metadata:

- nr_cells: Denotes in how many cells the gene is detected
- per_cells: Denotes in what percentage of cells the gene is detected
- total_expr: Shows the total sum of gene expression in all cells
- mean_expr: Average gene expression in all cells
- mean_expr_det: Average gene expression in cells with detectable levels of the gene

Value

giotto object if return_gobject = TRUE

Examples

```
addGeneStatistics(gobject)
```

addHMRF	<i>addHMRF</i>
---------	----------------

Description

Add selected results from doHMRF to the giotto object

Usage

```
addHMRF(gobject, HMRFoutput, k = NULL, betas_to_add = NULL, hmrf_name = NULL)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
HMRFoutput	HMRF output from doHMRF()
k	number of domains
betas_to_add	results from different betas that you want to add
name	specify a custom name

Details

Description ...

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
addHMRF(gobject)
```

addNetworkLayout	<i>addNetworkLayout</i>
------------------	-------------------------

Description

Add a network layout for a selected nearest neighbor network

Usage

```
addNetworkLayout(
  gobject,
  nn_network_to_use = NULL,
  network_name = NULL,
  layout_type = c("drl"),
  options_list = NULL,
  layout_name = "layout",
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	kNN or sNN
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to be used
<code>layout_type</code>	layout algorithm to use
<code>options_list</code>	list of options for selected layout
<code>layout_name</code>	name for layout
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

Details

Description of layouts and options.

Value

giotto object with updated layout for selected NN network

Examples

```
addNetworkLayout(gobject)
```

<code>addStatistics</code>	<i>addStatistics</i>
----------------------------	----------------------

Description

adds genes and cells statistics to the giotto object

Usage

```
addStatistics(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  detection_threshold = 0,
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>detection_threshold</code>	detection threshold to consider a gene detected
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

Details

See [addGeneStatistics](#) and [addCellStatistics](#)

Value

giotto object if return_gobject = TRUE, else a list with results

Examples

```
addStatistics(gobject)
```

adjustGiottoMatrix	<i>adjustGiottoMatrix</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

Description

normalize and/or scale expresion values of Giotto object

Usage

```
adjustGiottoMatrix(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  batch_columns = NULL,
  covariate_columns = NULL,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  update_slot = c("custom")
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
batch_columns	metadata columns that represent different batch (max = 2)
covariate_columns	metadata columns that represent covariates to regress out
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
update_slot	expression slot that will be updated (default = custom)

Details

This function implements the [limma::removeBatchEffect](#) function to remove known batch effects and to adjust expression values according to provided covariates.

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
adjustGiottoMatrix(gobject)
```

aes_string2	<i>aes_string2</i>
-------------	--------------------

Description

makes sure aes_string can also be used with names that start with numeric values

Usage

```
aes_string2(...)
```

allCellCellcommunicationsScores	<i>allCellCellcommunicationsScores</i>
---------------------------------	--

Description

All Cell-Cell communication scores based on spatial expression of interacting cells

Usage

```
allCellCellcommunicationsScores(
  gobject,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  cluster_column = "cell_types",
  random_iter = 100,
  gene_set_1,
  gene_set_2,
  log2FC_addendum = 0.1,
  min_observations = 2,
  verbose = c("a little", "a lot", "none")
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object to use
spatial_network_name	spatial network to use for identifying interacting cells
cluster_column	cluster column with cell type information
random_iter	number of iterations
gene_set_1	first specific gene set from gene pairs
gene_set_2	second specific gene set from gene pairs
log2FC_addendum	addendum to add when calculating log2FC
min_observations	minimum number of interactions needed to be considered
verbose	verbose

Details

Details will follow.

Value

Cell-Cell communication scores for gene pairs based on spatial interaction

Examples

```
allCellCellcommunicationsScores(gobject)
```

```
all_plots_save_function
```

```
all_plots_save_function
```

Description

Function to automatically save plots to directory of interest

Usage

```
all_plots_save_function(  
  gobject,  
  plot_object,  
  save_dir = NULL,  
  save_folder = NULL,  
  save_name = NULL,  
  default_save_name = "giotto_plot",  
  save_format = NULL,  
  show_saved_plot = F,  
  ncol = 1,  
  nrow = 1,  
  scale = 1,  
  base_width = NULL,  
  base_height = NULL,  
  base_aspect_ratio = NULL,  
  units = NULL,  
  dpi = NULL,  
  limitsize = TRUE,  
  ...  
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
plot_object	object to plot
save_dir	directory to save to
save_folder	folder in save_dir to save to
save_name	name of plot

save_format	format (e.g. png, tiff, pdf, ...)
show_saved_plot	load & display the saved plot
ncol	number of columns
nrow	number of rows
scale	scale
base_width	width
base_height	height
base_aspect_ratio	aspect ratio
units	units
dpi	Plot resolution
limitsize	When TRUE (the default), ggsave will not save images larger than 50x50 inches, to prevent the common error of specifying dimensions in pixels.
...	additional parameters to ggplot_save_function or general_save_function

See Also

[Giotto::general_save_function](#)

Examples

```
all_plots_save_function(gobject)
```

annotateGiotto	<i>annotateGiotto</i>
----------------	-----------------------

Description

Converts cluster results into provided annotation.

Usage

```
annotateGiotto(
  gobject,
  annotation_vector = NULL,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  name = "cell_types"
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
annotation_vector	named annotation vector (names = cluster ids)
cluster_column	cluster column to convert to annotation names
name	new name for annotation column

Details

You need to specify which (cluster) column you want to annotate and you need to provide an annotation vector like this:

- 1. identify the cell type of each cluster
- 2. create a vector of these cell types, e.g. `cell_types = c('T-cell', 'B-cell', 'Stromal')`
- 3. provide original cluster names to previous vector, e.g. `names(cell_types) = c(2, 1, 3)`

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
annotateGiotto(gobject)
```

```
annotateSpatialNetwork
```

```
annotateSpatialNetwork
```

Description

Annotate spatial network with cell metadata information.

Usage

```
annotateSpatialNetwork(
  gobject,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  cluster_column
)
```

Arguments

```
gobject          giotto object
spatial_network_name
                  name of spatial network to use
cluster_column   name of column to use for clusters
```

Value

annotated network in data.table format

Examples

```
annotateSpatialNetwork(gobject)
```

```

annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_2D
    annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_2D
    
```

Description

annotate spatial locations with 2D spatial grid information

Usage

```
annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_2D(spatloc, spatgrid)
```

Arguments

spatloc	spatial_locs slot from giotto object
spatgrid	selected spatial_grid slot from giotto object

Value

annotated spatial location data.table

Examples

```
annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_2D()
```

```

annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_3D
    annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_3D
    
```

Description

annotate spatial locations with 3D spatial grid information

Usage

```
annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_3D(spatloc, spatgrid)
```

Arguments

spatloc	spatial_locs slot from giotto object
spatgrid	selected spatial_grid slot from giotto object

Value

annotated spatial location data.table

Examples

```
annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_3D()
```

```
average_gene_gene_expression_in_groups
      average_gene_gene_expression_in_groups
```

Description

calculate average expression per cluster

Usage

```
average_gene_gene_expression_in_groups(
  gobject,
  cluster_column = "cell_types",
  gene_set_1,
  gene_set_2
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column with cell type information
<code>gene_set_1</code>	first specific gene set from gene pairs
<code>gene_set_2</code>	second specific gene set from gene pairs

Details

Details will follow.

Value

data.table with average expression scores for each cluster

Examples

```
average_gene_gene_expression_in_groups(gobject)
```

```
binGetSpatialGenes      binGetSpatialGenes
```

Description

Rapid computation of genes that are spatially clustered

Usage

```
binGetSpatialGenes(
  gobject,
  bin_method = c("kmeans", "rank"),
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  nstart = 3,
  iter_max = 10,
  percentage_rank = 10,
  do_fisher_test = F,
  community_expectation = 5,
  verbose = F
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>bin_method</code>	method to binarize gene expression
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use (default = 'spatial_network')
<code>nstart</code>	kmeans: nstart parameter
<code>iter_max</code>	kmeans: iter.max parameter
<code>do_fisher_test</code>	perform fisher test
<code>community_expectation</code>	cell degree expectation in spatial communities
<code>verbose</code>	be verbose
<code>rank_percentage</code>	percentage of top cells for binarization

Details

We provide two ways to identify spatial genes based on gene expression binarization. Both methods are identical except for how binarization is performed.

- 1. binarize: Each gene is binarized (0 or 1) in each cell with **kmeans** ($k = 2$) or based on **rank** percentile
- 2. network: All cells are connected through a k-nearest neighbor network
- 3. contingency table: A contingency table is calculated based on all pairwise cell-cell interactions (0-0, 0-1, 1-0 or 1-1)
- 4. For each gene an odds-ratio (OR) and fisher.test (optional) is calculated

Additionally 2 other statistics are provided:

- Number of cells with high expression (binary = 1)
- total and ratio of highly connected cells: Cells with a connectivity higher than community_expectation

Value

data.table with results (see details)

Examples

```
binGetSpatialGenes(gobject)
```

calculateHVG	<i>calculateHVG</i>
--------------	---------------------

Description

compute highly variable genes

Usage

```
calculateHVG(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  method = c("cov_groups", "cov_loess"),  
  reverse_log_scale = FALSE,  
  logbase = 2,  
  expression_threshold = 0,  
  nr_expression_groups = 20,  
  zscore_threshold = 1.5,  
  HVGname = "hvg",  
  difference_in_cov = 0.1,  
  show_plot = NA,  
  return_plot = NA,  
  save_plot = NA,  
  save_param = list(),  
  default_save_name = "HVGplot",  
  return_gobject = TRUE  
)
```

Arguments

- gobject giotto object
- expression_values expression values to use
- method method to calculate highly variable genes
- reverse_log_scale reverse log-scale of expression values (default = FALSE)
- logbase if reverse_log_scale is TRUE, which log base was used?
- expression_threshold expression threshold to consider a gene detected
- nr_expression_groups number of expression groups for cov_groups
- zscore_threshold zscore to select hvg for cov_groups

HVGname name for highly variable genes in cell metadata
 difference_in_cov minimum difference in coefficient of variance required
 show_plot show plot
 return_plot return ggplot object
 save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
 save_param list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
 default_save_name default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
 return_gobject boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

Details

Currently we provide 2 ways to calculate highly variable genes: **1. high coeff of variance (COV) within groups:**

First genes are binned (*nr_expression_groups*) into average expression groups and the COV for each gene is converted into a z-score within each bin. Genes with a z-score higher than the threshold (*zscore_threshold*) are considered highly variable.

2. high COV based on loess regression prediction:

A predicted COV is calculated for each gene using loess regression ($COV \sim \log(\text{mean expression})$). Genes that show a higher than predicted COV (*difference_in_cov*) are considered highly variable.

Value

giotto object highly variable genes appended to gene metadata (fDataDT)

Examples

```
calculateHVG(gobject)
```

calculateMetaTable	<i>calculateMetaTable</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

Description

calculates the average gene expression for one or more (combined) annotation columns.

Usage

```
calculateMetaTable(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  metadata_cols = NULL,  
  selected_genes = NULL  
)
```

Arguments

gobject giotto object
 expression_values expression values to use
 metadata_cols annotation columns found in pDataDT(gobject)
 selected_genes subset of genes to use

Value

data.table with average expression values for each gene per (combined) annotation

Examples

```
calculateMetaTable(gobject)
```

```
calculateMetaTableCells
      calculateMetaTableCells
```

Description

calculates the average metadata values for one or more (combined) annotation columns.

Usage

```
calculateMetaTableCells(
  gobject,
  value_cols = NULL,
  metadata_cols = NULL,
  spat_enr_names = NULL
)
```

Arguments

gobject giotto object
 value_cols metadata or enrichment value columns to use
 metadata_cols annotation columns found in pDataDT(gobject)
 spat_enr_names which spatial enrichment results to include

Value

data.table with average metadata values per (combined) annotation

Examples

```
calculateMetaTableCells(gobject)
```

```
calculate_spatial_genes_python  
    calculate_spatial_genes_python
```

Description

Calculate spatial genes using distance matrix.

Usage

```
calculate_spatial_genes_python(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  metric = "euclidean",  
  subset_genes = NULL,  
  rbp_p = 0.95,  
  examine_top = 0.3,  
  python_path = NULL  
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>metric</code>	distance metric to use
<code>subset_genes</code>	only run on this subset of genes
<code>rbp_p</code>	fractional binarization threshold
<code>examine_top</code>	top fraction to evaluate with silhouette
<code>python_path</code>	specify specific path to python if required

Details

Description of how we compute spatial pattern genes.

Value

data.table with spatial scores

Examples

```
calculate_spatial_genes_python(gobject)
```

cellProximityBarplot *cellProximityBarplot*

Description

Create barplot from cell-cell proximity scores

Usage

```
cellProximityBarplot(
  gobject,
  CPscore,
  min_orig_ints = 5,
  min_sim_ints = 5,
  p_val = 0.05,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "cellProximityBarplot"
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>CPscore</code>	CPscore, output from <code>cellProximityEnrichment()</code>
<code>min_orig_ints</code>	filter on minimum original cell-cell interactions
<code>min_sim_ints</code>	filter on minimum simulated cell-cell interactions
<code>p_val</code>	p-value
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <code>all_plots_save_function()</code>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

Details

This function creates a barplot that shows the spatial proximity enrichment or depletion of cell type pairs.

Value

ggplot barplot

Examples

```
cellProximityBarplot(CPscore)
```

```
cellProximityEnrichment  
    cellProximityEnrichment
```

Description

Compute cell-cell interaction enrichment (observed vs expected)

Usage

```
cellProximityEnrichment(  
  gobject,  
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",  
  cluster_column,  
  number_of_simulations = 100  
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	name of column to use for clusters
<code>number_of_simulations</code>	number of simulations to create expected observations

Details

Spatial proximity enrichment or depletion between pairs of cell types is calculated by calculating the observed over the expected frequency of cell-cell proximity interactions. The expected frequency is the average frequency calculated from a number of spatial network simulations. Each individual simulation is obtained by random permutations of the cell type labels of each node (cell) in the spatial network.

Value

List of cell Proximity scores (CPscores) in data.table format. The first data.table (`raw_sim_table`) shows the raw observations of both the original and simulated networks. The second data.table (`enrichm_res`) shows the enrichment results.

Examples

```
cellProximityEnrichment(gobject)
```

cellProximityHeatmap *cellProximityHeatmap*

Description

Create heatmap from cell-cell proximity scores

Usage

```
cellProximityHeatmap(
  gobject,
  CPscore,
  scale = T,
  order_cell_types = T,
  color_breaks = NULL,
  color_names = NULL,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "cellProximityHeatmap"
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
CPscore	CPscore, output from cellProximityEnrichment()
scale	scale cell-cell proximity interaction scores
order_cell_types	order cell types based on enrichment correlation
color_breaks	numerical vector of length 3 to represent min, mean and maximum
color_names	character color vector of length 3
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

This function creates a heatmap that shows the spatial proximity enrichment or depletion of cell type pairs.

Value

ggplot heatmap

Examples

```
cellProximityHeatmap(CPscore)
```

```
cellProximityNetwork    cellProximityNetwork
```

Description

Create network from cell-cell proximity scores

Usage

```
cellProximityNetwork(
  gobject,
  CPscore,
  remove_self_edges = FALSE,
  self_loop_strength = 0.1,
  color_depletion = "lightgreen",
  color_enrichment = "red",
  rescale_edge_weights = TRUE,
  edge_weight_range_depletion = c(0.1, 1),
  edge_weight_range_enrichment = c(1, 5),
  layout = "Fruchterman",
  only_show_enrichment_edges = F,
  edge_width_range = c(0.1, 2),
  node_size = 4,
  node_text_size = 6,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "cellProximityNetwork"
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
CPscore	CPscore, output from cellProximityEnrichment()
remove_self_edges	remove enrichment/depletion edges with itself
self_loop_strength	size of self-loops
color_depletion	color for depleted cell-cell interactions
color_enrichment	color for enriched cell-cell interactions
rescale_edge_weights	rescale edge weights (boolean)
edge_weight_range_depletion	numerical vector of length 2 to rescale depleted edge weights

edge_weight_range_enrichment	numerical vector of length 2 to rescale enriched edge weights
layout	layout algorithm to use to draw nodes and edges
only_show_enrichment_edges	show only the enriched pairwise scores
edge_width_range	range of edge width
node_size	size of nodes
node_text_size	size of node labels
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

This function creates a network that shows the spatial proximity enrichment or depletion of cell type pairs.

Value

igraph plot

Examples

```
cellProximityNetwork(CPscore)
```

cellProximitySpatPlot *cellProximitySpatPlot*

Description

Visualize 2D cell-cell interactions according to spatial coordinates in ggplot mode

Usage

```
cellProximitySpatPlot(gobject, ...)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
interaction_name	cell-cell interaction name
cluster_column	cluster column with cell clusters
sdimx	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
sdimy	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')

cell_color	color for cells (see details)
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
show_other_cells	decide if show cells not in network
show_network	show underlying spatial network
network_color	color of spatial network
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
show_grid	show spatial grid
grid_color	color of spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
coord_fix_ratio	fix ratio between x and y-axis
show_legend	show legend
point_size_select	size of selected points
point_select_border_col	border color of selected points
point_select_border_stroke	stroke size of selected points
point_size_other	size of other points
point_other_border_col	border color of other points
point_other_border_stroke	stroke size of other points
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[cellProximitySpatPlot2D](#) and [cellProximitySpatPlot3D](#) for 3D

Examples

```
cellProximitySpatPlot(gobject)
```

```
cellProximitySpatPlot2D
```

```
cellProximitySpatPlot2D
```

Description

Visualize 2D cell-cell interactions according to spatial coordinates in ggplot mode

Usage

```
cellProximitySpatPlot2D(
  gobject,
  interaction_name = NULL,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  show_other_cells = F,
  show_network = F,
  show_other_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  coord_fix_ratio = 1,
  show_legend = T,
  point_size_select = 2,
  point_select_border_col = "black",
  point_select_border_stroke = 0.05,
  point_size_other = 1,
  point_alpha_other = 0.3,
  point_other_border_col = "lightgrey",
  point_other_border_stroke = 0.01,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "cellProximitySpatPlot2D"
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>interaction_name</code>	cell-cell interaction name

cluster_column	cluster column with cell clusters
sdimx	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
sdimy	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
cell_color	color for cells (see details)
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
show_other_cells	decide if show cells not in network
show_network	show underlying spatial network
network_color	color of spatial network
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
show_grid	show spatial grid
grid_color	color of spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
coord_fix_ratio	fix ratio between x and y-axis
show_legend	show legend
point_size_select	size of selected points
point_select_border_col	border color of selected points
point_select_border_stroke	stroke size of selected points
point_size_other	size of other points
point_other_border_col	border color of other points
point_other_border_stroke	stroke size of other points
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
cellProximitySpatPlot2D(gobject)
```

```
cellProximitySpatPlot3D
```

```
cellProximitySpatPlot2D
```

Description

Visualize 3D cell-cell interactions according to spatial coordinates in plotly mode

Usage

```
cellProximitySpatPlot3D(
  gobject,
  interaction_name = NULL,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  sdimz = "sdimz",
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  show_other_cells = T,
  show_network = T,
  show_other_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  show_legend = T,
  point_size_select = 4,
  point_size_other = 2,
  point_alpha_other = 0.5,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  z_ticks = NULL,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "cellProximitySpatPlot3D",
  ...
)
```


Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>interaction_name</code>	cell-cell interaction name
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column with cell clusters
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>sdimz</code>	z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimz')
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>show_other_cells</code>	decide if show cells not in network
<code>show_network</code>	show underlying spatial network
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>show_grid</code>	show spatial grid
<code>grid_color</code>	color of spatial grid
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend
<code>point_size_select</code>	size of selected points
<code>point_size_other</code>	size of other points
<code>show_plot</code>	show plots
<code>return_plot</code>	return plotly object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <code>all_plots_save_function()</code>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
cellProximitySpatPlot3D(gobject)
```

cellProximityVisPlot *cellProximityVisPlot*

Description

Visualize cell-cell interactions according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
cellProximityVisPlot(
  gobject,
  interaction_name = NULL,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  sdimz = NULL,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  show_other_cells = F,
  show_network = F,
  show_other_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  coord_fix_ratio = 1,
  show_legend = T,
  point_size_select = 2,
  point_select_border_col = "black",
  point_select_border_stroke = 0.05,
  point_size_other = 1,
  point_alpha_other = 0.3,
  point_other_border_col = "lightgrey",
  point_other_border_stroke = 0.01,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  z_ticks = NULL,
  plot_method = c("ggplot", "plotly"),
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>interaction_name</code>	cell-cell interaction name
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column with cell clusters

sdimx	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
sdimy	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
sdimz	z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimz')
cell_color	color for cells (see details)
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
show_network	show underlying spatial network
network_color	color of spatial network
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
show_grid	show spatial grid
grid_color	color of spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
coord_fix_ratio	fix ratio between x and y-axis
show_legend	show legend
point_size_select	size of selected points
point_select_border_col	border color of selected points
point_select_border_stroke	stroke size of selected points
point_size_other	size of other points
point_other_border_col	border color of other points
point_other_border_stroke	stroke size of other points

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot or plotly

Examples

```
cellProximityVisPlot(gobject)
```

```
cellProximityVisPlot_2D_ggplot
      cellProximityVisPlot_2D_ggplot
```

Description

Visualize 2D cell-cell interactions according to spatial coordinates in ggplot mode

Usage

```
cellProximityVisPlot_2D_ggplot(
  gobject,
  interaction_name = NULL,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  show_other_cells = F,
  show_network = F,
  show_other_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  coord_fix_ratio = 1,
  show_legend = T,
  point_size_select = 2,
  point_select_border_col = "black",
  point_select_border_stroke = 0.05,
  point_size_other = 1,
  point_alpha_other = 0.3,
  point_other_border_col = "lightgrey",
  point_other_border_stroke = 0.01,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>interaction_name</code>	cell-cell interaction name
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column with cell clusters
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors

color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
show_other_cells	decide if show cells not in network
show_network	show underlying spatial network
network_color	color of spatial network
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
show_grid	show spatial grid
grid_color	color of spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
coord_fix_ratio	fix ratio between x and y-axis
show_legend	show legend
point_size_select	size of selected points
point_select_border_col	border color of selected points
point_select_border_stroke	stroke size of selected points
point_size_other	size of other points
point_other_border_col	border color of other points
point_other_border_stroke	stroke size of other points

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
cellProximityVisPlot_2D_ggplot(gobject)
```

```
cellProximityVisPlot_2D_plotly
      cellProximityVisPlot_2D_plotly
```

Description

Visualize 2D cell-cell interactions according to spatial coordinates in plotly mode

Usage

```
cellProximityVisPlot_2D_plotly(
  gobject,
  interaction_name = NULL,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  show_other_cells = F,
  show_network = F,
  show_other_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  show_legend = T,
  point_size_select = 2,
  point_size_other = 1,
  point_alpha_other = 0.3,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>interaction_name</code>	cell-cell interaction name
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column with cell clusters
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors

color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
show_other_cells	decide if show cells not in network
show_network	show underlying spatial network
network_color	color of spatial network
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
show_grid	show spatial grid
grid_color	color of spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
show_legend	show legend
point_size_select	size of selected points
coord_fix_ratio	fix ratio between x and y-axis

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
cellProximityVisPlot_2D_plotly(gobject)
```

```
cellProximityVisPlot_3D_plotly
      cellProximityVisPlot_3D_plotly
```

Description

Visualize 3D cell-cell interactions according to spatial coordinates in plotly mode

Usage

```
cellProximityVisPlot_3D_plotly(
  gobject,
  interaction_name = NULL,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  sdimz = NULL,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
```

```

    color_as_factor = T,
    show_other_cells = F,
    show_network = F,
    show_other_network = F,
    network_color = NULL,
    spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
    show_grid = F,
    grid_color = NULL,
    spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
    show_legend = T,
    point_size_select = 2,
    point_size_other = 1,
    point_alpha_other = 0.5,
    axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
    custom_ratio = NULL,
    x_ticks = NULL,
    y_ticks = NULL,
    z_ticks = NULL,
    ...
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>interaction_name</code>	cell-cell interaction name
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column with cell clusters
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>sdimz</code>	z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimz')
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>show_other_cells</code>	decide if show cells not in network
<code>show_network</code>	show underlying spatial network
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>show_grid</code>	show spatial grid
<code>grid_color</code>	color of spatial grid
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend
<code>point_size_select</code>	size of selected points
<code>coord_fix_ratio</code>	fix ratio between x and y-axis

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
cellProximityVisPlot_3D_plotly(gobject)
```

changeGiottoInstructions
changeGiottoInstructions

Description

Function to change one or more instructions from giotto object

Usage

```
changeGiottoInstructions(  
  gobject,  
  params = NULL,  
  new_values = NULL,  
  return_gobject = TRUE  
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
params	parameter(s) to change
new_values	new value(s) for parameter(s)
return_gobject	(boolean) return giotto object

Value

named vector with giotto instructions

Examples

```
changeGiottoInstructions()
```

clusterCells

*clusterCells***Description**

cluster cells using a NN-network and community detection algorithms

Usage

```
clusterCells(
  gobject,
  cluster_method = c("leiden", "louvain_community", "louvain_multinet", "randomwalk",
    "sNNclust", "kmeans", "hierarchical"),
  name = "cluster_name",
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  pyth_leid_resolution = 1,
  pyth_leid_weight_col = "weight",
  pyth_leid_part_type = c("RBConfigurationVertexPartition", "ModularityVertexPartition"),
  pyth_leid_init_memb = NULL,
  pyth_leid_iterations = 1000,
  pyth_louv_resolution = 1,
  pyth_louv_weight_col = NULL,
  python_louv_random = F,
  python_path = NULL,
  louvain_gamma = 1,
  louvain_omega = 1,
  walk_steps = 4,
  walk_clusters = 10,
  walk_weights = NA,
  sNNclust_k = 20,
  sNNclust_eps = 4,
  sNNclust_minPts = 16,
  borderPoints = TRUE,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes_to_use = NULL,
  dim_reduction_to_use = c("cells", "pca", "umap", "tsne"),
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",
  dimensions_to_use = 1:10,
  distance_method = c("original", "pearson", "spearman", "euclidean", "maximum",
    "manhattan", "canberra", "binary", "minkowski"),
  km_centers = 10,
  km_iter_max = 100,
  km_nstart = 1000,
  km_algorithm = "Hartigan-Wong",
  hc_agglomeration_method = c("ward.D2", "ward.D", "single", "complete", "average",
    "mcquitty", "median", "centroid"),
  hc_k = 10,
  hc_h = NULL,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  set_seed = T,
```

```

        seed_number = 1234,
        ...
    )

```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
cluster_method	community cluster method to use
name	name for new clustering result
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use
pyth_leid_resolution	resolution for leiden
pyth_leid_weight_col	column to use for weights
pyth_leid_part_type	partition type to use
pyth_leid_init_memb	initial membership
pyth_leid_iterations	number of iterations
pyth_louv_resolution	resolution for louvain
pyth_louv_weight_col	python louvain param: weight column
python_louv_random	python louvain param: random
python_path	specify specific path to python if required
louvain_gamma	louvain param: gamma or resolution
louvain_omega	louvain param: omega
walk_steps	randomwalk: number of steps
walk_clusters	randomwalk: number of clusters
walk_weights	randomwalk: weight column
sNNclust_k	SNNclust: k neighbors to use
sNNclust_eps	SNNclust: epsilon
sNNclust_minPts	SNNclust: min points
borderPoints	SNNclust: border points
expression_values	expression values to use
genes_to_use	= NULL,
dim_reduction_to_use	dimension reduction to use
dim_reduction_name	name of reduction 'pca',

dimensions_to_use	dimensions to use
distance_method	distance method
km_centers	kmeans centers
km_iter_max	kmeans iterations
km_nstart	kmeans random starting points
km_algorithm	kmeans algorithm
hc_agglomeration_method	hierarchical clustering method
hc_k	hierachical number of clusters
hc_h	hierarchical tree cutoff
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
set_seed	set seed
seed_number	number for seed
...	additional parameters

Details

Description of different clustering methods.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
clusterCells(gobject)
```

combineMetadata	<i>combineMetadata</i>
-----------------	------------------------

Description

This function combines the cell metadata with spatial locations and enrichment results from createSpatialEnrich

Usage

```
combineMetadata(gobject, spat_enr_names = NULL)
```

Arguments

gobject	Giotto object
spat_enr_names	names of spatial enrichment results to include

Value

Extended cell metadata in data.table format.

Examples

```
combineMetadata(gobject)
```

```
convertEnsemblToGeneSymbol  
  convertEnsemblToGeneSymbol
```

Description

This function convert ensembl gene IDs from a matrix to official gene symbols

Usage

```
convertEnsemblToGeneSymbol(matrix, species = c("mouse", "human"))
```

Arguments

matrix	an expression matrix with ensembl gene IDs as rownames
species	species to use for gene symbol conversion

Details

This function requires that the biomaRt library is installed

Value

expression matrix with gene symbols as rownames

Examples

```
convertEnsemblToGeneSymbol(matrix)
```

```
createGiottoInstructions  
  createGiottoInstructions
```

Description

Function to set global instructions for giotto functions

Usage

```
createGiottoInstructions(
  python_path = NULL,
  show_plot = NULL,
  return_plot = NULL,
  save_plot = NULL,
  save_dir = NULL,
  plot_format = NULL,
  dpi = NULL,
  units = NULL,
  height = NULL,
  width = NULL
)
```

Arguments

python_path	path to python binary to use
show_plot	print plot to console, default = TRUE
return_plot	return plot as object, default = TRUE
save_plot	automatically save plot, default = FALSE
save_dir	path to directory where to save plots
dpi	resolution for raster images
height	height of plots
width	width of plots

Value

named vector with giotto instructions

Examples

```
createGiottoInstructions()
```

createGiottoObject	<i>create Giotto object</i>
--------------------	-----------------------------

Description

Function to create a giotto object

Usage

```
createGiottoObject(
  raw_exprs,
  spatial_locs = NULL,
  norm_expr = NULL,
  norm_scaled_expr = NULL,
  custom_expr = NULL,
  cell_metadata = NULL,
```

```

    gene_metadata = NULL,
    spatial_network = NULL,
    spatial_network_name = NULL,
    spatial_grid = NULL,
    spatial_grid_name = NULL,
    spatial_enrichment = NULL,
    spatial_enrichment_name = NULL,
    dimension_reduction = NULL,
    nn_network = NULL,
    offset_file = NULL,
    instructions = NULL
)

```

Arguments

raw_exprs	matrix with raw expression counts [required]
spatial_locs	data.table or data.frame with coordinates for cell centroids
norm_expr	normalized expression values
norm_scaled_expr	scaled expression values
custom_expr	custom expression values
cell_metadata	cell annotation metadata
gene_metadata	gene annotation metadata
spatial_network	list of spatial network(s)
spatial_network_name	list of spatial network name(s)
spatial_grid	list of spatial grid(s)
spatial_grid_name	list of spatial grid name(s)
spatial_enrichment	list of spatial enrichment score(s) for each spatial region
spatial_enrichment_name	list of spatial enrichment name(s)
dimension_reduction	list of dimension reduction(s)
nn_network	list of nearest neighbor network(s)
offset_file	file used to stitch fields together (optional)
instructions	list of instructions or output result from createGiottoInstructions

Details

[Requirements] To create a giotto object you need to provide at least a matrix with genes as row names and cells as column names. To include spatial information about cells (or regions) you need to provide a data.table or data.frame with coordinates for all spatial dimensions. This can be 2D (x and y) or 3D (x, y, x). The row order for the cell coordinates should be the same as the column order for the provided expression data.

[Instructions] Additionally an instruction file, generated manually or with [createGiottoInstructions](#) can be provided to instructions, if not a default instruction file will be created for the Giotto object.

[Multiple fields] In case a dataset consists of multiple fields, like seqFISH+ for example, an offset file can be provided to stitch the different fields together. [stitchFieldCoordinates](#) can be used to generate such an offset file.

[Processed data] Processed count data, such as normalized data, can be provided using one of the different expression slots (norm_expr, norm_scaled_expr, custom_expr).

[Metadata] Cell and gene metadata can be provided using the cell and gene metadata slots. This data can also be added afterwards using the [addGeneMetadata](#) or [addCellMetadata](#) functions.

[Other information] Additional information can be provided through the appropriate slots:

- spatial networks
- spatial girds
- spatial enrichments
- dimensions reductions
- nearest neighbours networks

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
createGiottoObject(raw_exprs, spatial_locs)
```

createHeatmap_DT	<i>createHeatmap_DT</i>
------------------	-------------------------

Description

creates order for clusters

Usage

```
createHeatmap_DT(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  cluster_order = c("size", "correlation", "custom"),
  cluster_custom_order = NULL,
  cluster_cor_method = "pearson",
  cluster_hclust_method = "ward.D",
  gene_order = c("custom", "correlation"),
  gene_custom_order = NULL,
  gene_cor_method = "pearson",
  gene_hclust_method = "complete"
)
```


Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	name of column to use for clusters
<code>cluster_order</code>	method to determine cluster order
<code>cluster_custom_order</code>	custom order for clusters
<code>cluster_cor_method</code>	method for cluster correlation
<code>cluster_hclust_method</code>	method for hierarchical clustering of clusters
<code>gene_order</code>	method to determine gene order
<code>gene_custom_order</code>	custom order for genes
<code>gene_cor_method</code>	method for gene correlation
<code>gene_hclust_method</code>	method for hierarchical clustering of genes

Details

Creates input data.tables for plotHeatmap function.

Value

list

Examples

```
createHeatmap_DT(gobject)
```

`createNearestNetwork` *createNearestNetwork*

Description

create a nearest neighbour network

Usage

```
createNearestNetwork(
  gobject,
  type = c("sNN", "kNN"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "pca",
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",
  dimensions_to_use = 1:10,
  genes_to_use = NULL,
```

```

expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
name = "sNN.pca",
return_gobject = TRUE,
k = 30,
minimum_shared = 5,
top_shared = 3,
verbose = T,
...
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>type</code>	sNN or kNN
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction method to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	name of dimension reduction set to use
<code>dimensions_to_use</code>	number of dimensions to use as input
<code>genes_to_use</code>	if <code>dim_reduction_to_use = NULL</code> , which genes to use
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>name</code>	arbitrary name for NN network
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
<code>k</code>	number of k neighbors to use
<code>minimum_shared</code>	minimum shared neighbors
<code>top_shared</code>	keep at ...
<code>verbose</code>	be verbose
<code>...</code>	additional parameters

Details

Description of nearest neighbor network creation and filter steps.

Value

giotto object with updated NN network

Examples

```
createNearestNetwork(gobject)
```

createSpatialEnrich	<i>createSpatialEnrich</i>
---------------------	----------------------------

Description

Function to calculate gene signature enrichment scores per spatial position using a hypergeometric test.

Usage

```
createSpatialEnrich(
  gobject,
  enrich_method = c("PAGE", "rank", "hypergeometric"),
  sign_matrix,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reverse_log_scale = TRUE,
  logbase = 2,
  output_enrichment = c("original", "zscore"),
  name = "PAGE",
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	Giotto object
<code>enrich_method</code>	method for gene signature enrichment calculation
<code>sign_matrix</code>	Matrix of signature genes for each cell type / process
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>reverse_log_scale</code>	reverse expression values from log scale
<code>logbase</code>	log base to use if <code>reverse_log_scale = TRUE</code>
<code>output_enrichment</code>	how to return enrichment output
<code>name</code>	to give to spatial enrichment results, default = PAGE
<code>return_gobject</code>	return giotto object

Details

For details see the individual functions:

- PAGE: [PAGEEnrich](#)
- PAGE: [rankEnrich](#)
- PAGE: [hyperGeometricEnrich](#)

Value

Giotto object or enrichment results if `return_gobject = FALSE`

Examples

```
createSpatialEnrich(gobject)
```

createSpatialGrid	<i>createSpatialGrid</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

Create a spatial grid.

Usage

```
createSpatialGrid(
  gobject,
  sdimx_stepsize = NULL,
  sdimy_stepsize = NULL,
  sdimz_stepsize = NULL,
  minimum_padding = 1,
  name = "spatial_grid",
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
sdimx_stepsize	stepsize along the x-axis
sdimy_stepsize	stepsize along the y-axis
sdimz_stepsize	stepsize along the z-axis
minimum_padding	minimum padding on the edges
name	name for spatial grid (default = 'spatial_grid')
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

Details

Creates a spatial grid with defined x, y (and z) dimensions. The dimension units are based on the provided spatial location units.

Value

giotto object with updated spatial grid slot

Examples

```
createSpatialGrid(gobject)
```

createSpatialGrid_2D *createSpatialGrid_2D*

Description

create a spatial grid for 2D spatial data.

Usage

```
createSpatialGrid_2D(  
  gobject,  
  sdimx_stepsize = NULL,  
  sdimy_stepsize = NULL,  
  minimum_padding = 1,  
  name = "spatial_grid",  
  return_gobject = TRUE  
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>sdimx_stepsize</code>	stepsize along the x-axis
<code>sdimy_stepsize</code>	stepsize along the y-axis
<code>minimum_padding</code>	minimum padding on the edges
<code>name</code>	name for spatial grid (default = 'spatial_grid')
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

Details

Creates a spatial grid with defined x, y (and z) dimensions. The dimension units are based on the provided spatial location units.

Value

giotto object with updated spatial grid slot

Examples

```
createSpatialGrid_2D(gobject)
```

`createSpatialGrid_3D` *createSpatialGrid_3D*

Description

Create a spatial grid for 3D spatial data.

Usage

```
createSpatialGrid_3D(  
  gobject,  
  sdimx_stepsize = NULL,  
  sdimy_stepsize = NULL,  
  sdimz_stepsize = NULL,  
  minimum_padding = 1,  
  name = "spatial_grid",  
  return_gobject = TRUE  
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>sdimx_stepsize</code>	stepsize along the x-axis
<code>sdimy_stepsize</code>	stepsize along the y-axis
<code>sdimz_stepsize</code>	stepsize along the z-axis
<code>minimum_padding</code>	minimum padding on the edges
<code>name</code>	name for spatial grid (default = 'spatial_grid')
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

Details

Creates a spatial grid with defined x, y (and z) dimensions. The dimension units are based on the provided spatial location units.

Value

giotto object with updated spatial grid slot

Examples

```
createSpatialGrid_3D(gobject)
```

```
createSpatialNetwork    createSpatialNetwork
```

Description

Create a spatial network based on cell centroid physical distances.

Usage

```
createSpatialNetwork(
  gobject,
  k = 4,
  dimensions = "all",
  maximum_distance = NULL,
  minimum_k = 0,
  name = "spatial_network",
  verbose = F,
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>k</code>	number of nearest neighbors based on physical distance
<code>dimensions</code>	which spatial dimensions to use (default = all)
<code>maximum_distance</code>	distance cutoff for nearest neighbors to consider
<code>minimum_k</code>	minimum nearest neighbours if <code>maximum_distance</code> != NULL
<code>name</code>	name for spatial network (default = 'spatial_network')
<code>verbose</code>	verbose
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

Details

Creates a spatial network connecting single-cells based on their physical distance to each other. Number of neighbors can be determined by `k`, maximum distance from each cell with or without setting a minimum `k` for each cell.

dimensions: default = 'all' which takes all possible dimensions. Alternatively you can provide a character vector that specifies the spatial dimensions to use, e.g. `c("sdimx", "sdimy")` or a numerical vector, e.g. `2:3`

maximum_distance: to create a network based on maximum distance only, you also need to set `k` to a very high value, e.g. `k = 100`

Value

giotto object with updated spatial network slot

Examples

```
createSpatialNetwork(gobject)
```

```
create_average_detection_DT
      create_average_detection_DT
```

Description

calculates average gene detection for a cell metadata factor (e.g. cluster)

Usage

```
create_average_detection_DT(
  gobject,
  meta_data_name,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  detection_threshold = 0
)
```

Arguments

```
gobject          giotto object
meta_data_name   name of metadata column to use
expression_values
                  which expression values to use
detection_threshold
                  detection threshold to consider a gene detected
```

Value

data.table with average gene expression values for each factor

```
create_average_DT      create_average_DT
```

Description

calculates average gene expression for a cell metadata factor (e.g. cluster)

Usage

```
create_average_DT(
  gobject,
  meta_data_name,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom")
)
```

Arguments

```
gobject          giotto object
meta_data_name   name of metadata column to use
expression_values
                  which expression values to use
```


Value

data.table with average gene expression values for each factor

```
create_cell_type_random_cell_IDs  
  create_cell_type_random_cell_IDs
```

Description

creates randomized cell ids within a selection of cell types

Usage

```
create_cell_type_random_cell_IDs(  
  gobject,  
  cluster_column = "cell_types",  
  needed_cell_types  
)
```

Arguments

`gobject` giotto object to use

`cluster_column` cluster column with cell type information

`needed_cell_types`
 vector of cell type names for which a random id will be found

Details

Details will follow.

Value

list of randomly sampled cell ids with same cell type composition

Examples

```
create_cell_type_random_cell_IDs(gobject)
```

create_cluster_matrix *create_cluster_matrix*

Description

creates aggregated matrix for a given clustering

Usage

```
create_cluster_matrix(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  gene_subset = NULL
)
```

Examples

```
create_cluster_matrix(gobject)
```

create_dimObject *create_dimObject*

Description

Creates an object that stores a dimension reduction output

Usage

```
create_dimObject(
  name = "test",
  reduction_method = NULL,
  coordinates = NULL,
  misc = NULL
)
```

Arguments

name	arbitrary name for object
reduction_method	method used to reduce dimensions
coordinates	accepts the coordinates after dimension reduction
misc	any additional information will be added to this slot

Value

number of distinct colors

decide_cluster_order	<i>decide_cluster_order</i>
----------------------	-----------------------------

Description

creates order for clusters

Usage

```
decide_cluster_order(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  genes,  
  cluster_column = NULL,  
  cluster_order = c("size", "correlation", "custom"),  
  cluster_custom_order = NULL,  
  cor_method = "pearson",  
  hclust_method = "ward.D"  
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	name of column to use for clusters
<code>cluster_order</code>	method to determine cluster order
<code>cluster_custom_order</code>	custom order for clusters
<code>cor_method</code>	method for correlation
<code>hclust_method</code>	method for hierarchical clustering

Details

Calculates order for clusters.

Value

custom

Examples

```
decide_cluster_order(gobject)
```

detectSpatialPatterns *detectSpatialPatterns*

Description

Identify spatial patterns through PCA on average expression in a spatial grid.

Usage

```
detectSpatialPatterns(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  min_cells_per_grid = 4,
  scale_unit = F,
  ncp = 100,
  show_plot = T,
  PC_zscore = 1.5
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use (default = 'spatial_grid')
<code>min_cells_per_grid</code>	minimum number of cells in a grid to be considered
<code>scale_unit</code>	scale features
<code>ncp</code>	number of principal components to calculate
<code>show_plot</code>	show plots
<code>PC_zscore</code>	minimum z-score of variance explained by a PC

Details

Steps to identify spatial patterns:

- 1. average gene expression for cells within a grid, see `createSpatialGrid`
- 2. perform PCA on the average grid expression profiles
- 3. convert variance of principal components (PCs) to z-scores and select PCs based on a z-score threshold

Value

spatial pattern object 'spatPatObj'

Examples

```
detectSpatialPatterns(gobject)
```

dimCellPlot

dimCellPlot

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
dimCellPlot(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  cell_annotation_values,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 0.5,
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
  center_point_size = 4,
  center_point_border_col = "black",
  center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  label_size = 4,
  label_fontface = "bold",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  point_size = 1,
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_legend = T,
  cow_n_col = 2,
  cow_rel_h = 1,
  cow_rel_w = 1,
  cow_align = "h",
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "dimCellPlot"
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>cell_annotation_values</code>	numeric cell annotation columns
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells
<code>other_cell_color</code>	color of not selected cells
<code>other_point_size</code>	size of not selected cells
<code>show_cluster_center</code>	plot center of selected clusters
<code>show_center_label</code>	plot label of selected clusters
<code>center_point_size</code>	size of center points
<code>label_size</code>	size of labels
<code>label_fontface</code>	font of labels
<code>edge_alpha</code>	column to use for alpha of the edges
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>point_border_col</code>	color of border around points
<code>point_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of border around points
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend

show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
cell_color	color for cells (see details)
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
title	title for plot, defaults to cell_color parameter

Details

Description of parameters. For 3D plots see [dimCellPlot2D](#)

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
dimCellPlot(gobject)
```

dimCellPlot2D	<i>dimCellPlot2D</i>
---------------	----------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
dimCellPlot2D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  cell_annotation_values,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
```

```

show_other_cells = T,
other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
other_point_size = 0.5,
show_cluster_center = F,
show_center_label = T,
center_point_size = 4,
center_point_border_col = "black",
center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
label_size = 4,
label_fontface = "bold",
edge_alpha = NULL,
point_size = 1,
point_border_col = "black",
point_border_stroke = 0.1,
show_legend = T,
cow_n_col = 2,
cow_rel_h = 1,
cow_rel_w = 1,
cow_align = "h",
show_plot = NA,
return_plot = NA,
save_plot = NA,
save_param = list(),
default_save_name = "dimCellPlot2D"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>cell_annotation_values</code>	numeric cell annotation columns
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter

<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells
<code>other_cell_color</code>	color of not selected cells
<code>other_point_size</code>	size of not selected cells
<code>show_cluster_center</code>	plot center of selected clusters
<code>show_center_label</code>	plot label of selected clusters
<code>center_point_size</code>	size of center points
<code>label_size</code>	size of labels
<code>label_fontface</code>	font of labels
<code>edge_alpha</code>	column to use for alpha of the edges
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>point_border_col</code>	color of border around points
<code>point_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of border around points
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <code>all_plots_save_function()</code>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>title</code>	title for plot, defaults to <code>cell_color</code> parameter

Details

Description of parameters. For 3D plots see [dimPlot3D](#)

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
dimCellPlot2D(gobject)
```

dimGenePlot

dimGenePlot

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
dimGenePlot(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes = NULL,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  network_color = "lightgray",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
  point_size = 1,
  genes_high_color = "red",
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  midpoint = 0,
  cow_n_col = 2,
  cow_rel_h = 1,
  cow_rel_w = 1,
  cow_align = "h",
  show_legend = T,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "dimGenePlot"
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	gene expression values to use
genes	genes to show
dim_reduction_to_use	dimension reduction to use

dim_reduction_name	dimension reduction name
dim1_to_use	dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use	dimension to use on y-axis
show_NN_network	show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
scale_alpha_with_expression	scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
point_size	size of point (cell)
point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
midpoint	size of point (cell)
cow_n_col	cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
...	parameters for cowplot::save_plot()

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[dimGenePlot3D](#)

Examples

```
dimGenePlot(gobject)
```

dimGenePlot2D

*dimGenePlot2D***Description**

Visualize cells and gene expression according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
dimGenePlot2D(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes = NULL,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  network_color = "lightgray",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
  point_size = 1,
  genes_high_color = "red",
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  midpoint = 0,
  cow_n_col = 2,
  cow_rel_h = 1,
  cow_rel_w = 1,
  cow_align = "h",
  show_legend = T,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "dimGenePlot2D"
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use

dim_reduction_name	dimension reduction name
dim1_to_use	dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use	dimension to use on y-axis
show_NN_network	show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
scale_alpha_with_expression	scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
point_size	size of point (cell)
point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
midpoint	size of point (cell)
cow_n_col	cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
...	parameters for cowplot::save_plot()

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[dimGenePlot3D](#)

Examples

```
dimGenePlot2D(gobject)
```

dimGenePlot3D	<i>dimGenePlot3D</i>
---------------	----------------------

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
dimGenePlot3D(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes = NULL,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = 3,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  network_color = "lightgray",
  cluster_column = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 1,
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  point_size = 2,
  genes_high_color = NULL,
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  show_legend = T,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "dimGenePlot3D"
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name

dim1_to_use	dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use	dimension to use on y-axis
dim3_to_use	dimension to use on z-axis
show_NN_network	show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
point_size	size of point (cell)
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
...	parameters for cowplot::save_plot()

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
dimGenePlot3D(gobject)
```

dimPlot2D

dimPlot2D

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```

dimPlot2D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 0.5,
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
  center_point_size = 4,
  center_point_border_col = "black",
  center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  label_size = 4,
  label_fontface = "bold",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  point_size = 1,
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  title = NULL,
  show_legend = T,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "dimPlot2D"
)

dimPlot(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",

```



```

    cell_color = NULL,
    color_as_factor = T,
    cell_color_code = NULL,
    cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
    gradient_midpoint = NULL,
    gradient_limits = NULL,
    select_cell_groups = NULL,
    select_cells = NULL,
    show_other_cells = T,
    other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
    other_point_size = 0.5,
    show_cluster_center = F,
    show_center_label = T,
    center_point_size = 4,
    center_point_border_col = "black",
    center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
    label_size = 4,
    label_fontface = "bold",
    edge_alpha = NULL,
    point_size = 1,
    point_border_col = "black",
    point_border_stroke = 0.1,
    title = NULL,
    show_legend = T,
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "dimPlot"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors

cell_color_gradient	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
gradient_midpoint	midpoint for color gradient
gradient_limits	vector with lower and upper limits
select_cell_groups	select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
other_point_size	size of not selected cells
show_cluster_center	plot center of selected clusters
show_center_label	plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size	size of center points
label_size	size of labels
label_fontface	font of labels
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
point_size	size of point (cell)
point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
title	title for plot, defaults to cell_color parameter
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters. For 3D plots see [dimPlot3D](#)

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [dimPlot3D](#)

Value

ggplot
ggplot

Examples

```
dimPlot2D(gobject)
dimPlot2D(gobject)
```

dimPlot3D	<i>dimPlot3D</i>
-----------	------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
dimPlot3D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = 3,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 2,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
  center_point_size = 4,
  label_size = 4,
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  point_size = 3,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "dim3D"
)
```

Arguments

```
gobject          giotto object
dim_reduction_to_use
                  dimension reduction to use
dim_reduction_name
                  dimension reduction name
```

dim1_to_use	dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use	dimension to use on y-axis
dim3_to_use	dimension to use on z-axis
select_cell_groups	select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
other_point_size	size of not selected cells
show_NN_network	show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
cell_color	color for cells (see details)
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
show_cluster_center	plot center of selected clusters
show_center_label	plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size	size of center points
label_size	size of labels
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
point_size	size of point (cell)
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
show_legend	show legend

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
dimPlot3D(gobject)
```

direction_test_CPG	<i>direction_test_CPG</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

Description

shows direction of change

Usage

```
direction_test(x, min_fdr = 0.05)
```

Examples

```
direction_test_CPG()
```

doHclust	<i>doHclust</i>
----------	-----------------

Description

cluster cells using hierarchical clustering algorithm

Usage

```
doHclust(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes_to_use = NULL,
  dim_reduction_to_use = c("cells", "pca", "umap", "tsne"),
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",
  dimensions_to_use = 1:10,
  distance_method = c("pearson", "spearman", "original", "euclidean", "maximum",
    "manhattan", "canberra", "binary", "minkowski"),
  agglomeration_method = c("ward.D2", "ward.D", "single", "complete", "average",
    "mcquitty", "median", "centroid"),
  k = 10,
  h = NULL,
  name = "hclust",
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  set_seed = T,
  seed_number = 1234
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
genes_to_use	subset of genes to use

dim_reduction_to_use	dimension reduction to use
dim_reduction_name	dimensions reduction name
dimensions_to_use	dimensions to use
distance_method	distance method
agglomeration_method	agglomeration method for hclust
k	number of final clusters
h	cut hierarchical tree at height = h
name	name for hierarchical clustering
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
set_seed	set seed
seed_number	number for seed
...	additional parameters

Details

Description on how to use Kmeans clustering method.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
doHclust(gobject)
```

doHMRF	<i>doHMRF</i>
--------	---------------

Description

Run HMRF

Usage

```
doHMRF(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",  
  spatial_genes = NULL,  
  spatial_dimensions = c("sdimx", "sdimy", "sdimz"),  
  dim_reduction_to_use = NULL,  
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",  
  dimensions_to_use = 1:10,  
  name = "test",  
  k = 10,  
)
```

```

    betas = c(0, 2, 50),
    tolerance = 1e-10,
    zscore = c("none", "rowcol", "colrow"),
    numinit = 100,
    python_path = NULL,
    output_folder = NULL,
    overwrite_output = TRUE
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use for HMRF
<code>spatial_genes</code>	spatial genes to use for HMRF
<code>spatial_dimensions</code>	select spatial dimensions to use, default is all possible dimensions
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	use another dimension reduction set as input
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	name of dimension reduction set to use
<code>dimensions_to_use</code>	number of dimensions to use as input
<code>name</code>	name of HMRF run
<code>k</code>	number of HMRF domains
<code>betas</code>	betas to test for
<code>tolerance</code>	tolerance
<code>zscore</code>	zscore
<code>numinit</code>	number of initializations
<code>python_path</code>	python path to use
<code>output_folder</code>	output folder to save results
<code>overwrite_output</code>	overwrite output folder

Details

Description of HMRF parameters ...

Value

Creates a directory with results that can be viewed with `viewHMRResults`

Examples

```
doHMRF(gobject)
```

doKmeans

*doKmeans***Description**

cluster cells using kmeans algorithm

Usage

```
doKmeans(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes_to_use = NULL,
  dim_reduction_to_use = c("cells", "pca", "umap", "tsne"),
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",
  dimensions_to_use = 1:10,
  distance_method = c("original", "pearson", "spearman", "euclidean", "maximum",
    "manhattan", "canberra", "binary", "minkowski"),
  centers = 10,
  iter_max = 100,
  nstart = 1000,
  algorithm = "Hartigan-Wong",
  name = "kmeans",
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  set_seed = T,
  seed_number = 1234
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
genes_to_use	subset of genes to use
dim_reduction_to_use	dimension reduction to use
dim_reduction_name	dimensions reduction name
dimensions_to_use	dimensions to use
distance_method	distance method
centers	number of final clusters
iter_max	kmeans maximum iterations
nstart	kmeans nstart
algorithm	kmeans algorithm
name	name for kmeans clustering
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

set_seed	set seed
seed_number	number for seed
...	additional parameters

Details

Description on how to use Kmeans clustering method.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
doKmeans(gobject)
```

doLeidenCluster	<i>doLeidenCluster</i>
-----------------	------------------------

Description

cluster cells using a NN-network and the Leiden community detection algorithm

Usage

```
doLeidenCluster(
  gobject,
  name = "leiden_clus",
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  python_path = NULL,
  resolution = 1,
  weight_col = "weight",
  partition_type = c("RBConfigurationVertexPartition", "ModularityVertexPartition"),
  init_membership = NULL,
  n_iterations = 1000,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  set_seed = T,
  seed_number = 1234,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
name	name for cluster
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use
python_path	specify specific path to python if required

resolution	resolution
weight_col	weight column
partition_type	partition type to use
init_membership	initial membership of cells
n_iterations	number of iterations
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
set_seed	set seed
seed_number	number for seed
...	additional parameters

Details

Description of Leiden clustering method.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
doLeidenCluster(gobject)
```

doLeidenSubCluster	<i>doLeidenSubCluster</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

Description

subcluster cells using a NN-network and the Leiden algorithm

Usage

```
doLeidenSubCluster(
  gobject,
  name = "sub_pleiden_clus",
  cluster_column = NULL,
  selected_clusters = NULL,
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_variance = 1, expression_values
    = "normalized"),
  hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,
  hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,
  use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,
  min_nr_of_hvg = 5,
  pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),
  nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),
  k_neighbors = 10,
  resolution = 0.5,
  n_iterations = 500,
  python_path = NULL,
```

```

    nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
    network_name = "sNN.pca",
    return_gobject = TRUE,
    verbose = T,
    ...
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name for new clustering result
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column to subcluster
<code>selected_clusters</code>	only do subclustering on these clusters
<code>hvg_param</code>	parameters for calculateHVG
<code>hvg_min_perc_cells</code>	threshold for detection in min percentage of cells
<code>hvg_mean_expr_det</code>	threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection
<code>use_all_genes_as_hvg</code>	forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA
<code>min_nr_of_hvg</code>	minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA
<code>pca_param</code>	parameters for runPCA
<code>nn_param</code>	parameters for parameters for createNearestNetwork
<code>k_neighbors</code>	number of k for createNearestNetwork
<code>resolution</code>	resolution of Leiden clustering
<code>n_iterations</code>	number of iterations
<code>python_path</code>	specify specific path to python if required
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
<code>verbose</code>	verbose
<code>...</code>	additional parameters

Details

Description of Leiden clustering method.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
doLeidenSubCluster(gobject)
```

doLouvainCluster	<i>doLouvainCluster</i>
------------------	-------------------------

Description

cluster cells using a NN-network and the Louvain algorithm.

Usage

```
doLouvainCluster(
  gobject,
  version = c("community", "multinet"),
  name = "louvain_clus",
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  python_path = NULL,
  resolution = 1,
  weight_col = NULL,
  gamma = 1,
  omega = 1,
  louv_random = F,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  set_seed = F,
  seed_number = 1234,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
version	implemented version of Louvain clustering to use
name	name for cluster
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use
python_path	specify specific path to python if required
resolution	resolution
gamma	gamma
omega	omega
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
set_seed	set seed
seed_number	number for seed
...	additional parameters

Details

Louvain clustering using the community or multinet implementation of the louvain clustering algorithm.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
doLouvainCluster(gobject)
```

```
doLouvainCluster_community
doLouvainCluster_community
```

Description

cluster cells using a NN-network and the Louvain algorithm from the community module in Python

Usage

```
doLouvainCluster_community(
    gobject,
    name = "louvain_clus",
    nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
    network_name = "sNN.pca",
    python_path = NULL,
    resolution = 1,
    weight_col = NULL,
    louv_random = F,
    return_gobject = TRUE,
    set_seed = F,
    seed_number = 1234,
    ...
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
name	name for cluster
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use
python_path	specify specific path to python if required
resolution	resolution
weight_col	weight column
louv_random	random
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
set_seed	set seed
seed_number	number for seed
...	additional parameters

Details

Description of Leiden clustering method.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
doLouvainCluster_community(gobject)
```

```
doLouvainCluster_multinet
```

```
doLouvainCluster_multinet
```

Description

cluster cells using a NN-network and the Louvain algorithm from the multinet package in R.

Usage

```
doLouvainCluster_multinet(  
  gobject,  
  name = "louvain_clus",  
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",  
  network_name = "sNN.pca",  
  weight_col = NULL,  
  gamma = 1,  
  omega = 1,  
  return_gobject = TRUE,  
  set_seed = F,  
  seed_number = 1234,  
  ...  
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
name	name for cluster
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use
gamma	gamma
omega	omega
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
set_seed	set seed
seed_number	number for seed
...	additional parameters
python_path	specify specific path to python if required

Details

See louvain algorithm from the multinet package in R.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
doLouvainCluster_multinet(gobject)
```

doLouvainSubCluster	<i>doLouvainSubCluster</i>
---------------------	----------------------------

Description

subcluster cells using a NN-network and the Louvain algorithm

Usage

```
doLouvainSubCluster(
  gobject,
  name = "sub_louvain_clus",
  version = c("community", "multinet"),
  cluster_column = NULL,
  selected_clusters = NULL,
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_variance = 1, expression_values
    = "normalized"),
  hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,
  hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,
  use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,
  min_nr_of_hvg = 5,
  pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),
  nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),
  k_neighbors = 10,
  resolution = 0.5,
  gamma = 1,
  omega = 1,
  python_path = NULL,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  verbose = T,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
name	name for new clustering result
version	version of Louvain algorithm to use

<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column to subcluster
<code>selected_clusters</code>	only do subclustering on these clusters
<code>hvg_param</code>	parameters for calculateHVG
<code>hvg_min_perc_cells</code>	threshold for detection in min percentage of cells
<code>hvg_mean_expr_det</code>	threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection
<code>use_all_genes_as_hvg</code>	forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA
<code>min_nr_of_hvg</code>	minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA
<code>pca_param</code>	parameters for runPCA
<code>nn_param</code>	parameters for parameters for createNearestNetwork
<code>k_neighbors</code>	number of k for createNearestNetwork
<code>resolution</code>	resolution for community algorithm
<code>gamma</code>	gamma
<code>omega</code>	omega
<code>python_path</code>	specify specific path to python if required
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
<code>verbose</code>	verbose
<code>...</code>	additional parameters

Details

Description of Louvain clustering method.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
doLouvainSubCluster(gobject)
```

```
doLouvainSubCluster_community
doLouvainSubCluster_community
```

Description

subcluster cells using a NN-network and the Louvain community detection algorithm

Usage

```
doLouvainSubCluster_community(
  gobject,
  name = "sub_louvain_comm_clus",
  cluster_column = NULL,
  selected_clusters = NULL,
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_variance = 1, expression_values
    = "normalized"),
  hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,
  hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,
  use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,
  min_nr_of_hvg = 5,
  pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),
  nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),
  k_neighbors = 10,
  resolution = 0.5,
  python_path = NULL,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  verbose = T,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name for new clustering result
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column to subcluster
<code>selected_clusters</code>	only do subclustering on these clusters
<code>hvg_param</code>	parameters for calculateHVG
<code>hvg_min_perc_cells</code>	threshold for detection in min percentage of cells
<code>hvg_mean_expr_det</code>	threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection
<code>use_all_genes_as_hvg</code>	forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA
<code>min_nr_of_hvg</code>	minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA
<code>pca_param</code>	parameters for runPCA

nn_param	parameters for parameters for createNearestNetwork
k_neighbors	number of k for createNearestNetwork
resolution	resolution
python_path	specify specific path to python if required
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
verbose	verbose
...	additional parameters

Details

Description of Leiden clustering method.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
doLouvainSubCluster_community(gobject)
```

```
doLouvainSubCluster_multinet
doLouvainSubCluster_multinet
```

Description

subcluster cells using a NN-network and the Louvain multinet detection algorithm

Usage

```
doLouvainSubCluster_multinet(
  gobject,
  name = "sub_louvain_mult_clus",
  cluster_column = NULL,
  selected_clusters = NULL,
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_variance = 1, expression_values
    = "normalized"),
  hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,
  hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,
  use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,
  min_nr_of_hvg = 5,
  pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),
  nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),
  k_neighbors = 10,
  gamma = 1,
  omega = 1,
```

```

    nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
    network_name = "sNN.pca",
    return_gobject = TRUE,
    verbose = T,
    ...
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name for new clustering result
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column to subcluster
<code>selected_clusters</code>	only do subclustering on these clusters
<code>hvg_param</code>	parameters for calculateHVG
<code>hvg_min_perc_cells</code>	threshold for detection in min percentage of cells
<code>hvg_mean_expr_det</code>	threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection
<code>use_all_genes_as_hvg</code>	forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA
<code>min_nr_of_hvg</code>	minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA
<code>pca_param</code>	parameters for runPCA
<code>nn_param</code>	parameters for parameters for createNearestNetwork
<code>k_neighbors</code>	number of k for createNearestNetwork
<code>gamma</code>	gamma
<code>omega</code>	omega
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
<code>verbose</code>	verbose
<code>...</code>	additional parameters
<code>python_path</code>	specify specific path to python if required

Details

Description of Louvain clustering method.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
doLouvainSubCluster_multinet(gobject)
```

doRandomWalkCluster *doRandomWalkCluster*

Description

Cluster cells using a random walk approach.

Usage

```
doRandomWalkCluster(
  gobject,
  name = "random_walk_clus",
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  walk_steps = 4,
  walk_clusters = 10,
  walk_weights = NA,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  set_seed = F,
  seed_number = 1234,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name for cluster
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use
<code>walk_steps</code>	number of walking steps
<code>walk_clusters</code>	number of final clusters
<code>walk_weights</code>	cluster column defining the walk weights
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
<code>set_seed</code>	set seed
<code>seed_number</code>	number for seed
<code>...</code>	additional parameters

Details

See random walk algorithm from the igraph package in R.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
doRandomWalkCluster(gobject)
```

doSNNCluster

*doSNNCluster***Description**

Cluster cells using a SNN cluster approach.

Usage

```
doSNNCluster(
  gobject,
  name = "sNN_clus",
  nn_network_to_use = "kNN",
  network_name = "kNN.pca",
  k = 20,
  eps = 4,
  minPts = 16,
  borderPoints = TRUE,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  set_seed = F,
  seed_number = 1234,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name for cluster
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (only works on kNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of kNN network to use
<code>k</code>	Neighborhood size for nearest neighbor sparsification to create the shared NN graph.
<code>eps</code>	Two objects are only reachable from each other if they share at least <code>eps</code> nearest neighbors.
<code>minPts</code>	minimum number of points that share at least <code>eps</code> nearest neighbors for a point to be considered a core points.
<code>borderPoints</code>	should borderPoints be assigned to clusters like in DBSCAN?
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
<code>set_seed</code>	set seed
<code>seed_number</code>	number for seed
<code>...</code>	additional parameters

Details

See `sNNclust` algorithm from `dbscan` package

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
doSNNCluster(gobject)
```

dt_to_matrix	<i>dt_to_matrix</i>
--------------	---------------------

Description

converts data.table to matrix

Usage

```
dt_to_matrix(x)
```

Examples

```
dt_to_matrix(x)
```

exportGiottoViewer	<i>exportGiottoViewer</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

Description

compute highly variable genes

Usage

```
exportGiottoViewer(
  gobject,
  output_directory = NULL,
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  annotations,
  dim_reductions,
  dim_reduction_names,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  dim_red_rounding = NULL,
  dim_red_rescale = c(-20, 20),
  expression_rounding = NULL,
  overwrite_dir = F,
  verbose = T
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>output_directory</code>	directory where to save the files
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	spatial enrichment results to include for annotations
<code>annotations</code>	giotto cell annotations to view
<code>dim_reductions</code>	high level dimension reductions to view
<code>dim_reduction_names</code>	specific dimension reduction names
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use in Viewer
<code>dim_red_rounding</code>	numerical indicating how to round the coordinates
<code>dim_red_rescale</code>	numericals to rescale the coordinates
<code>expression_rounding</code>	numerical indicating how to round the expression data
<code>overwrite_dir</code>	overwrite files in the directory if it already existed
<code>verbose</code>	be verbose

Details

Giotto Viewer expects the results from Giotto Analyzer in a specific format, which is provided by this function.

Value

writes the necessary output to use in Giotto Viewer

Examples

```
exportGiottoViewer(gobject)
```

```
exprOnlyCellCellcommunicationScores
      exprOnlyCellCellcommunicationScores
```

Description

Cell-Cell communication scores based on expression only

Usage

```
exprOnlyCellCellcommunicationScores(
  gobject,
  cluster_column = "cell_types",
  random_iter = 100,
  gene_set_1,
  gene_set_2,
  log2FC_addendum = 0.1,
  verbose = T
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object to use
cluster_column	cluster column with cell type information
random_iter	number of iterations
gene_set_1	first specific gene set from gene pairs
gene_set_2	second specific gene set from gene pairs
log2FC_addendum	addendum to add when calculating log2FC
verbose	verbose

Details

Details will follow.

Value

Cell-Cell communication scores for gene pairs based on expression only

Examples

```
exprOnlyCellCellcommunicationScores(gobject)
```

extended_gini_fun	<i>extended_gini_fun</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

calculate gini coefficient on a minimum length vector

Usage

```
extended_gini_fun(x, weights = rep(1, length = length(x)), minimum_length = 16)
```

Value

gini coefficient

extractNearestNetwork *extractNearestNetwork*

Description

Extracts a NN-network from a Giotto object as an igraph object

Usage

```
extractNearestNetwork(
  gobject,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca"
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
nn_network_to_use	kNN or sNN
network_name	name of NN network to be used

Value

igraph object

Examples

```
extractNearestNetwork(gobject)
```

fDataDT	<i>fDataDT</i>
---------	----------------

Description

show gene metadata

Usage

```
fDataDT(gobject)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
---------	---------------

Value

data.table with gene metadata

Examples

```
pDataDT(gobject)
```

filterCombinations	<i>filterCombinations</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

Description

Shows how many genes and cells are lost with combinations of thresholds.

Usage

```
filterCombinations(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("raw", "normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  expression_thresholds = c(1, 2),
  gene_det_in_min_cells = c(5, 50),
  min_det_genes_per_cell = c(200, 400),
  scale_x_axis = "identity",
  x_axis_offset = 0,
  scale_y_axis = "identity",
  y_axis_offset = 0,
  show_plot = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
expression_thresholds	all thresholds to consider a gene expressed
gene_det_in_min_cells	minimum number of cells that should express a gene to consider that gene further
min_det_genes_per_cell	minimum number of expressed genes per cell to consider that cell further
scale_x_axis	ggplot transformation for x-axis (e.g. log2)
x_axis_offset	x-axis offset to be used together with the scaling transformation
scale_y_axis	ggplot transformation for y-axis (e.g. log2)
y_axis_offset	y-axis offset to be used together with the scaling transformation
show_plot	show plot

Details

Creates a scatterplot that visualizes the number of genes and cells that are lost with a specific combination of a gene and cell threshold given an arbitrary cutoff to call a gene expressed. This function can be used to make an informed decision at the filtering step with filterGiotto.

Value

list of data.table and ggplot object

Examples

```
filterCombinations(gobject)
```

filterCPGscores	<i>filterCPGscores</i>
-----------------	------------------------

Description

visualize Cell Proximity Gene enrichment scores

Usage

```
filterCPGscores(
  CPGscore,
  min_cells = 5,
  min_fdr = 0.05,
  min_spat_diff = 0.2,
  min_log2_fc = 0.5,
  keep_int_duplicates = TRUE,
  direction = c("both", "up", "down")
)
```

Arguments

min_cells	min number of cells threshold
min_fdr	false_discovery threshold
min_spat_diff	spatial difference threshold
min_log2_fc	min log2 fold-change
keep_int_duplicates	keep both cell_A-cell_B and cell_B-cell_A
direction	expression changes to keep
method	visualization method

Details

This function filters the output from `getCellProximityGeneScores` based on false-discovery rate, minimum absolute difference, minimum log fold-change and direction of change.

Value

Gene to gene scores in data.table format

Examples

```
filterCPGscores(CPGscore)
```

filterDistributions	<i>filterDistributions</i>
---------------------	----------------------------

Description

show gene or cell distribution after filtering on expression threshold

Usage

```
filterDistributions(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("raw", "normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  expression_threshold = 1,
  detection = c("genes", "cells"),
  plot_type = c("histogram", "violin"),
  nr_bins = 30,
  fill_color = "lightblue",
  scale_axis = "identity",
  axis_offset = 0,
  show_plot = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>expression_threshold</code>	threshold to consider a gene expressed
<code>detection</code>	consider genes or cells
<code>plot_type</code>	type of plot
<code>nr_bins</code>	number of bins for histogram plot
<code>fill_color</code>	fill color for plots
<code>scale_axis</code>	ggplot transformation for axis (e.g. log2)
<code>axis_offset</code>	offset to be used together with the scaling transformation
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot

Value

ggplot object

Examples

```
filterDistributions(gobject)
```

filterGiotto	<i>filterGiotto</i>
--------------	---------------------

Description

filter Giotto object based on expression threshold

Usage

```
filterGiotto(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("raw", "normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  expression_threshold = 1,  
  gene_det_in_min_cells = 100,  
  min_det_genes_per_cell = 100,  
  verbose = F  
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
expression_threshold	threshold to consider a gene expressed
gene_det_in_min_cells	minimum # of cells that need to express a gene
min_det_genes_per_cell	minimum # of genes that need to be detected in a cell
verbose	verbose

Details

The function [filterCombinations](#) can be used to explore the effect of different parameter values.

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
filterGiotto(gobject)
```

findGiniMarkers	<i>findGiniMarkers</i>
-----------------	------------------------

Description

Identify marker genes for selected clusters based on gini detection and expression scores.

Usage

```
findGiniMarkers(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  subset_clusters = NULL,
  group_1 = NULL,
  group_2 = NULL,
  min_expr_gini_score = 0.5,
  min_det_gini_score = 0.5,
  detection_threshold = 0,
  rank_score = 1
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	gene expression values to use
cluster_column	clusters to use
subset_clusters	selection of clusters to compare
group_1	group 1 cluster IDs from cluster_column for pairwise comparison
group_2	group 2 cluster IDs from cluster_column for pairwise comparison
min_expr_gini_score	filter on minimum gini coefficient for expression
min_det_gini_score	filter minimum gini coefficient for detection
detection_threshold	detection threshold for gene expression
rank_score	rank scores to include

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

data.table with marker genes

Examples

```
findGiniMarkers(gobject)
```

```
findGiniMarkers_one_vs_all
      findGiniMarkers_one_vs_all
```

Description

Identify marker genes for all clusters based on gini detection and expression scores.

Usage

```
findGiniMarkers_one_vs_all(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  subset_clusters = NULL,
  min_expr_gini_score = 0.5,
  min_det_gini_score = 0.5,
  detection_threshold = 0,
  min_genes = 10,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	clusters to use
<code>subset_clusters</code>	selection of clusters to compare
<code>min_expr_gini_score</code>	filter on minimum gini coefficient on expression
<code>min_det_gini_score</code>	filter on minimum gini coefficient on detection
<code>detection_threshold</code>	detection threshold for gene expression
<code>min_genes</code>	minimum genes to keep per cluster, overrides pval and logFC
<code>verbose</code>	be verbose

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

data.table with marker genes

Examples

```
findGiniMarkers_one_vs_all(gobject)
```

findMarkers

*findMarkers***Description**

Identify marker genes for selected clusters.

Usage

```
findMarkers(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  method = c("scrn", "gini", "mast"),
  subset_clusters = NULL,
  group_1 = NULL,
  group_2 = NULL,
  min_expr_gini_score = 0.5,
  min_det_gini_score = 0.5,
  detection_threshold = 0,
  rank_score = 1,
  group_1_name = NULL,
  group_2_name = NULL,
  adjust_columns = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	gene expression values to use
cluster_column	clusters to use
method	method to use to detect differentially expressed genes
subset_clusters	selection of clusters to compare
group_1	group 1 cluster IDs from cluster_column for pairwise comparison
group_2	group 2 cluster IDs from cluster_column for pairwise comparison
min_expr_gini_score	gini: filter on minimum gini coefficient for expression
min_det_gini_score	gini: filter minimum gini coefficient for detection
detection_threshold	gini: detection threshold for gene expression
rank_score	gini: rank scores to include
group_1_name	mast: custom name for group_1 clusters
group_2_name	mast: custom name for group_2 clusters
adjust_columns	mast: column in pDataDT to adjust for (e.g. detection rate)
...	additional parameters for the findMarkers function in scrn or zlm function in MAST

Details

Wrapper for findScranMarkers, findGiniMarkers and FindMastMarkers.

Value

data.table with marker genes

Examples

```
findMarkers(gobject)
```

```
findMarkers_one_vs_all
```

```
findMarkers_one_vs_all
```

Description

Identify marker genes for all clusters.

Usage

```
findMarkers_one_vs_all(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  subset_clusters = NULL,
  method = c("scrn", "gini", "mast"),
  pval = 0.01,
  logFC = 0.5,
  min_genes = 10,
  min_expr_gini_score = 0.5,
  min_det_gini_score = 0.5,
  detection_threshold = 0,
  rank_score = 1,
  adjust_columns = NULL,
  verbose = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	gene expression values to use
cluster_column	clusters to use
subset_clusters	selection of clusters to compare
method	method to use to detect differentially expressed genes
pval	scrn & mast: filter on minimal p-value

logFC scan & mast: filter on logFC
min_genes minimum genes to keep per cluster, overrides pval and logFC
min_expr_gini_score gini: filter on minimum gini coefficient for expression
min_det_gini_score gini: filter minimum gini coefficient for detection
detection_threshold gini: detection threshold for gene expression
rank_score gini: rank scores to include
adjust_columns mast: column in pDataDT to adjust for (e.g. detection rate)
verbose be verbose
... additional parameters for the findMarkers function in scan or zlm function in
 MAST

Details

Wrapper for findScranMarkers_one_vs_all, findGiniMarkers_one_vs_all and FindMastMarkers_one_vs_all.

Value

data.table with marker genes

Examples

findMarkers_one_vs_all(gobject)

findMastMarkers	<i>findMastMarkers</i>
-----------------	------------------------

Description

Identify marker genes for selected clusters based on the MAST package.

Usage

```
findMastMarkers(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  cluster_column,  
  group_1 = NULL,  
  group_1_name = NULL,  
  group_2 = NULL,  
  group_2_name = NULL,  
  adjust_columns = NULL,  
  ...  
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	clusters to use
<code>group_1</code>	group 1 cluster IDs from <code>cluster_column</code> for pairwise comparison
<code>group_1_name</code>	custom name for <code>group_1</code> clusters
<code>group_2</code>	group 2 cluster IDs from <code>cluster_column</code> for pairwise comparison
<code>group_2_name</code>	custom name for <code>group_2</code> clusters
<code>adjust_columns</code>	column in <code>pDataDT</code> to adjust for (e.g. detection rate)
<code>...</code>	additional parameters for the <code>zlm</code> function in <code>MAST</code>

Details

This is a minimal convenience wrapper around the `MAST` functions to detect differentially expressed genes.

Value

data.table with marker genes

Examples

```
findMastMarkers(gobject)
```

```
findMastMarkers_one_vs_all
      findMastMarkers_one_vs_all
```

Description

Identify marker genes for all clusters based on the `MAST` package.

Usage

```
findMastMarkers_one_vs_all(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  subset_clusters = NULL,
  adjust_columns = NULL,
  pval = 0.001,
  logFC = 1,
  min_genes = 10,
  verbose = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	clusters to use
<code>subset_clusters</code>	selection of clusters to compare
<code>adjust_columns</code>	column in <code>pDataDT</code> to adjust for (e.g. detection rate)
<code>pval</code>	filter on minimal p-value
<code>logFC</code>	filter on logFC
<code>min_genes</code>	minimum genes to keep per cluster, overrides <code>pval</code> and <code>logFC</code>
<code>verbose</code>	be verbose
<code>...</code>	additional parameters for the <code>zlm</code> function in <code>MAST</code>

Details

This is a minimal convenience wrapper around the `MAST` functions to detect differentially expressed genes.

Value

data.table with marker genes

Examples

```
findMastMarkers_one_vs_all(gobject)
```

<code>findScranMarkers</code>	<i>findScranMarkers</i>
-------------------------------	-------------------------

Description

Identify marker genes for selected clusters based on `scran`'s implementation of `findMarkers`.

Usage

```
findScranMarkers(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  subset_clusters = NULL,
  group_1 = NULL,
  group_2 = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	clusters to use
<code>subset_clusters</code>	selection of clusters to compare
<code>group_1</code>	group 1 cluster IDs from <code>cluster_column</code> for pairwise comparison
<code>group_2</code>	group 2 cluster IDs from <code>cluster_column</code> for pairwise comparison
<code>...</code>	additional parameters for the <code>findMarkers</code> function in <code>scrn</code>

Details

This is a minimal convenience wrapper around the `findMarkers` function from the `scrn` package.

Value

data.table with marker genes

Examples

```
findScranMarkers(gobject)
```

```
findScranMarkers_one_vs_all
      findScranMarkers_one_vs_all
```

Description

Identify marker genes for all clusters in a one vs all manner based on `scrn`'s implementation of `findMarkers`.

Usage

```
findScranMarkers_one_vs_all(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  subset_clusters = NULL,
  pval = 0.01,
  logFC = 0.5,
  min_genes = 10,
  verbose = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	clusters to use
<code>subset_clusters</code>	subset of clusters to use
<code>pval</code>	filter on minimal p-value
<code>logFC</code>	filter on logFC
<code>min_genes</code>	minimum genes to keep per cluster, overrides pval and logFC
<code>verbose</code>	be verbose
<code>...</code>	additional parameters for the findMarkers function in scan

Details

This is a minimal convenience wrapper around the findMarkers function from the scan package.

Value

data.table with marker genes

Examples

```
findScranMarkers_one_vs_all(gobject)
```

<code>find_grid_2D</code>	<i>find_grid_2D</i>
---------------------------	---------------------

Description

find grid location in 2D

Usage

```
find_grid_2D(grid_DT, x_loc, y_loc)
```

<code>find_grid_3D</code>	<i>find_grid_3D</i>
---------------------------	---------------------

Description

find grid location in 3D

Usage

```
find_grid_3D(grid_DT, x_loc, y_loc, z_loc)
```

find_grid_x	<i>find_grid_x</i>
-------------	--------------------

Description

find grid location on x-axis

Usage

```
find_grid_x(grid_DT, x_loc)
```

find_grid_y	<i>find_grid_y</i>
-------------	--------------------

Description

find grid location on y-axis

Usage

```
find_grid_y(grid_DT, y_loc)
```

find_grid_z	<i>find_grid_z</i>
-------------	--------------------

Description

find grid location on z-axis

Usage

```
find_grid_z(grid_DT, z_loc)
```

fish_function	<i>fish_function</i>
---------------	----------------------

Description

perform fisher exact test

Usage

```
fish_function(x_to, x_from)
```

fish_function2	<i>fish_function2</i>
----------------	-----------------------

Description

perform fisher exact test

Usage

```
fish_function2(A, B, C, D)
```

FSV_show	<i>FSV_show</i>
----------	-----------------

Description

Visualize spatial variable genes caculated by spatial_DE

Usage

```
FSV_show(  
  results,  
  ms_results = NULL,  
  size = c(4, 2, 1),  
  color = c("blue", "green", "red"),  
  sig_alpha = 0.5,  
  unsig_alpha = 0.5  
)
```

Arguments

results	results caculated by spatial_DE
ms_results	ms_results caculated by spatial_DE
size	indicate different levels of qval
color	indicate different SV features
sig_alpha	transparency of significant genes
unsig_alpha	transparency of insignificant genes

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

nothing

Examples

```
FSV_show(results)
```

GenePattern_show	<i>GenePattern_show</i>
------------------	-------------------------

Description

Visualize genes distribution patterns calculated by spatial_AEH

Usage

```
GenePattern_show(  
  gobject = NULL,  
  AEH_results = NULL,  
  sdimx = NULL,  
  sdimy = NULL,  
  point_size = 3,  
  point_alpha = 1,  
  low_color = "blue",  
  mid_color = "white",  
  high_color = "red",  
  midpoint = 0  
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>AEH_results</code>	results from spatial_AEH
<code>sdimx</code>	x axis of spatial locus
<code>sdimy</code>	y axis of spatial locus
<code>point_size</code>	size of points to indicate cells
<code>point_alpha</code>	transparency of points to indicate cells
<code>low_color</code>	color to indicate low score level
<code>mid_color</code>	color to indicate middle score level
<code>high_color</code>	color to indicate high score level
<code>midpoint</code>	point to set mid_color

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

nothing

Examples

```
GenePattern_show(gobject,AEH_results)
```

general_save_function *general_save_function*

Description

Function to automatically save plots to directory of interest

Usage

```
general_save_function(
  gobject,
  plot_object,
  save_dir = NULL,
  save_folder = NULL,
  save_name = NULL,
  default_save_name = "giotto_plot",
  save_format = c("png", "tiff", "pdf", "svg"),
  show_saved_plot = F,
  base_width = NULL,
  base_height = NULL,
  base_aspect_ratio = NULL,
  units = NULL,
  dpi = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
plot_object	non-ggplot object to plot
save_dir	directory to save to
save_folder	folder in save_dir to save to
save_name	name of plot
save_format	format (e.g. png, tiff, pdf, ...)
show_saved_plot	load & display the saved plot
base_width	width
base_height	height
base_aspect_ratio	aspect ratio
units	units
dpi	Plot resolution

Examples

```
general_save_function(gobject)
```

get10Xmatrix	<i>get10Xmatrix</i>
--------------	---------------------

Description

This function creates an expression matrix from a 10X structured folder

Usage

```
get10Xmatrix(path_to_data)
```

Arguments

path_to_data path to the 10X folder

Details

A typical 10X folder is named raw_feature_bc_matrix or raw_feature_bc_matrix. It has 3 files:

- barcodes
- features.tsv.gz
- matrix.mtx.gz

Value

expression matrix from 10X

Examples

```
get10Xmatrix(10Xmatrix)
```

getCellProximityGeneScores	<i>getCellProximityGeneScores</i>
----------------------------	-----------------------------------

Description

Compute cell-cell interaction enrichment (observed vs expected)

Usage

```
getCellProximityGeneScores(
  gobject,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  cluster_column = "louvain_clus.1",
  selected_genes = NULL,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  do_diff_test = TRUE,
  diff_test = c("t.test", "wilcox"),
  minimum_unique_cells = NA,
```

```

    fold_change_addendum = 0.1,
    in_two_directions = TRUE,
    exclude_selected_cells_from_test = F,
    verbose = T
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	name of column to use for clusters
<code>selected_genes</code>	selection of genes to perform calculations for
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>do_diff_test</code>	perform differential test
<code>diff_test</code>	which differential expression test
<code>minimum_unique_cells</code>	minimum number of cells needed to proceed
<code>fold_change_addendum</code>	constant to add when calculating log2 fold-change
<code>in_two_directions</code>	shows enrichment in both directions: cell1-cell2, cell2-cell1
<code>exclude_selected_cells_from_test</code>	exclude certain cells from test
<code>verbose</code>	verbose

Details

Function to calculate if genes are differentially expressed in cell types when they interact (according to physical proximity) with other cell types. The results data.table contains the following columns:

- `genes`: All or selected list of tested genes
- `cell_expr_1`: average gene expression in cell type 1 from unified_int cell-cell interaction
- `cell_expr_2`: average gene expression in cell type 2 from unified_int cell-cell interaction
- `comb_expr`: combined average gene expression in cell type 1 and 2 from unified_int cell-cell interaction
- `all_cell_expr_1`: average gene expression for all cells from cell type 1
- `all_cell_expr_2`: average gene expression for all cells from cell type 2
- `all_comb_expr`: combined average gene expression for all cells from cell type 1 and 2
- `pval_1`: p-value from test between interacting cells and all cells from cell type 1
- `pval_2`: p-value from test between interacting cells and all cells from cell type 2
- `cell_type_1`: first cell type of cell-cell interaction
- `cell_type_2`: second cell type of cell-cell interaction
- `interaction`: the cell-cell interaction, based on physical proximity
- `nr_1`: number of cell type 1 in the unified cell-cell interaction
- `nr_2`: number of cell type 2 in the unified cell-cell interaction

- all_nr_1: number of all cell type 1 in the whole dataset
- all_nr_2: number of all cell type 2 in the whole dataset
- diff_spat: difference between comb_expr and all_comb_expr
- diff_spat_1: difference between cell_expr_1 and all_cell_expr_1
- diff_spat_2: difference between cell_expr_1 and all_cell_expr_1
- log2fc_spat_1: fold-change of diff_spat_1
- log2fc_spat_2: fold-change of diff_spat_2
- log2fc_spat: fold-change of diff_spat
- type_int: type of interaction
- unified_int: interaction with alphabetically sorted cell type 1 and cell type 2
- unif_int_rank: 1 or 2
- fdr_1: fdr from test between interacting cells and all cells from cell type 1
- fdr_2: fdr from test between interacting cells and all cells from cell type 2

Value

Cell Proximity Gene scores (CPGscores) in data.table format

Examples

```
getCellProximityGeneScores(gobject)
```

```
getClusterSimilarity    getClusterSimilarity
```

Description

Creates data.table with pairwise correlation scores between each cluster.

Usage

```
getClusterSimilarity(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  cor = c("pearson", "spearman")
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
cluster_column	name of column to use for clusters
cor	correlation score to calculate distance

Details

Creates data.table with pairwise correlation scores between each cluster and the group size (# of cells) for each cluster. This information can be used together with mergeClusters to combine very similar or small clusters into bigger clusters.

Value

data.table

Examples

```
getClusterSimilarity(gobject)
```

getDendrogramSplits	<i>getDendrogramSplits</i>
---------------------	----------------------------

Description

Split dendrogram at each node and keep the leave (label) information..

Usage

```
getDendrogramSplits(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  cluster_column,  
  cor = c("pearson", "spearman"),  
  distance = "ward.D",  
  h = NULL,  
  h_color = "red",  
  show_dend = TRUE,  
  verbose = TRUE  
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
cluster_column	name of column to use for clusters
cor	correlation score to calculate distance
distance	distance method to use for hierarchical clustering
h	height of horizontal lines to plot
h_color	color of horizontal lines
show_dend	show dendrogram
verbose	be verbose

Details

Creates a data.table with three columns and each row represents a node in the dendrogram. For each node the height of the node is given together with the two subdendrograms. This information can be used to determine in a hierarchical manner differentially expressed marker genes at each node.

Value

data.table object

Examples

```
getDendrogramSplits(gobject)
```

getDistinctColors	<i>getDistinctColors</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

Returns a number of distinct colors based on the RGB scale

Usage

```
getDistinctColors(n)
```

Arguments

n	number of colors wanted
---	-------------------------

Value

number of distinct colors

getGeneToGeneScores	<i>getGeneToGeneScores</i>
---------------------	----------------------------

Description

Compute gene-gene enrichment scores.

Usage

```
getGeneToGeneScores(  
  CPGscore,  
  selected_genes = NULL,  
  specific_genes_1 = NULL,  
  specific_genes_2 = NULL,  
  min_cells = 5,  
  min_fdr = 0.05,  
  min_spat_diff = 0.2,  
  min_log2_fc = 0.5,
```

```
direction = c("both", "up", "down"),
fold_change_addendum = 0.1,
verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

CPGscore	CPGscore, output from getCellProximityGeneScores()
selected_genes	select subset of genes
specific_genes_1	specific source genes (see details)
specific_genes_2	specific target genes (see details)
min_cells	min number of cells threshold
min_spat_diff	spatial difference threshold
min_log2_fc	log2 fold-change threshold
direction	up or downregulation or both
fold_change_addendum	constant to add when calculating log2 fold-change
verbose	verbose
min_pval	p-value threshold

Details

Give more details ...

Value

Gene to gene scores in data.table format

Examples

```
getGeneToGeneScores(CPGscore)
```

```
get_cell_to_cell_sorted_name_conversion
      get_cell_to_cell_sorted_name_conversion
```

Description

creates unified cell-cell interaction names

Usage

```
get_cell_to_cell_sorted_name_conversion(all_cell_types)
```

Examples

```
get_cell_to_cell_sorted_name_conversion()
```

```
get_interaction_gene_enrichment  
    get_interaction_gene_enrichment
```

Description

Computes gene enrichment between all interactions

Usage

```
get_interaction_gene_enrichment(  
  spatial_network,  
  unified_int_col = "unified_int",  
  source_col = "source_clus",  
  source_IDs = "from",  
  neighb_col = "neighb_clus",  
  neighb_IDs = "to",  
  expression_matrix,  
  cell_annotation,  
  annotation_ID = "uniq_ID",  
  cell_type_col,  
  do_diff_test = T,  
  diff_test = c("t.test", "wilcox"),  
  minimum_unique_cells = NA,  
  exclude_selected_cells_from_test = T,  
  verbose = T  
)
```

Examples

```
get_interaction_gene_enrichment()
```

```
get_specific_interaction_gene_enrichment  
    get_specific_interaction_gene_enrichment
```

Description

Computes gene enrichment between specified interaction

Usage

```
get_specific_interaction_gene_enrichment(  
  sub_spatial_network,  
  source_col = "source_clus",  
  source_IDs = "from",  
  neighb_col = "neighb_clus",  
  neighb_IDs = "to",  
  expression_matrix,
```

```

interaction_name = "to_specify",
cell_annotation,
annotation_ID = "uniq_ID",
cell_type_col,
do_diff_test = T,
diff_test = c("t.test", "wilcox"),
minimum_unique_cells = NA,
exclude_selected_cells_from_test = T
)

```

Examples

```
get_specific_interaction_gene_enrichment()
```

```
ggplot_save_function  ggplot_save_function
```

Description

Function to automatically save plots to directory of interest

Usage

```

ggplot_save_function(
  gobject,
  plot_object,
  save_dir = NULL,
  save_folder = NULL,
  save_name = NULL,
  default_save_name = "giotto_plot",
  save_format = NULL,
  show_saved_plot = F,
  ncol = 1,
  nrow = 1,
  scale = 1,
  base_width = NULL,
  base_height = NULL,
  base_aspect_ratio = NULL,
  units = NULL,
  dpi = NULL,
  limitsize = TRUE,
  ...
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>plot_object</code>	ggplot object to plot
<code>save_dir</code>	directory to save to
<code>save_folder</code>	folder in <code>save_dir</code> to save to

save_name	name of plot
save_format	format (e.g. png, tiff, pdf, ...)
show_saved_plot	load & display the saved plot
ncol	number of columns
nrow	number of rows
scale	scale
base_width	width
base_height	height
base_aspect_ratio	aspect ratio
units	units
dpi	Plot resolution
limitsize	When TRUE (the default), ggsave will not save images larger than 50x50 inches, to prevent the common error of specifying dimensions in pixels.

See Also

[cowplot::save_plot](#)

Examples

```
ggplot_save_function(gobject)
```

giotto-class	<i>S4 giotto Class</i>
--------------	------------------------

Description

Framework of giotto object to store and work with spatial expression data

Slots

raw_exprs	raw expression counts
norm_expr	normalized expression counts
norm_scaled_expr	normalized and scaled expression counts
custom_expr	custom normalized counts
spatial_locs	spatial location coordinates for cells
cell_metadata	metadata for cells
gene_metadata	metadata for genes
cell_ID	unique cell IDs
gene_ID	unique gene IDs
spatial_network	spatial network in data.table/data.frame format
spatial_grid	spatial grid in data.table/data.frame format
dimension_reduction	slot to save dimension reduction coordinates

nn_network nearest neighbor network in igraph format
 parameters slot to save parameters that have been used
 instructions slot for global function instructions
 offset_file offset file used to stitch together image fields
 OS_platform Operating System to run Giotto analysis on

hyperGeometricEnrich *hyperGeometricEnrich*

Description

Function to calculate gene signature enrichment scores per spatial position using a hypergeometric test.

Usage

```
hyperGeometricEnrich(
  gobject,
  sign_matrix,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reverse_log_scale = TRUE,
  logbase = 2,
  output_enrichment = c("original", "zscore")
)
```

Arguments

gobject	Giotto object
sign_matrix	Matrix of signature genes for each cell type / process
expression_values	expression values to use
reverse_log_scale	reverse expression values from log scale
logbase	log base to use if reverse_log_scale = TRUE
output_enrichment	how to return enrichment output

Details

The enrichment score is calculated based on the p-value from the hypergeometric test, $-\log_{10}(\text{p-value})$.

Value

data.table with enrichment results

Examples

```
hyperGeometricEnrich(gobject)
```

iterCluster

iterCluster

Description

cluster cells iteratively

Usage

```
iterCluster(
  gobject,
  cluster_method = c("leiden", "louvain_community", "louvain_multinet"),
  nr_rounds = 5,
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_variance = 1, expression_values
    = "normalized"),
  hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,
  hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,
  use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,
  min_nr_of_hvg = 5,
  pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),
  nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),
  k_neighbors = 20,
  resolution = 1,
  gamma = 1,
  omega = 1,
  python_path = NULL,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  name = "iter_clus",
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>cluster_method</code>	clustering algorithm to use
<code>nr_rounds</code>	number of iterative rounds
<code>hvg_param</code>	parameters for calculateHVG
<code>hvg_min_perc_cells</code>	threshold for detection in min percentage of cells
<code>hvg_mean_expr_det</code>	threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection
<code>use_all_genes_as_hvg</code>	forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA
<code>min_nr_of_hvg</code>	minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA
<code>pca_param</code>	parameters for runPCA
<code>nn_param</code>	parameters for parameters for runPCA

k_neighbors	k for nn-network
resolution	resolution
gamma	gamma
omega	omega
python_path	python path to use for Leiden clustering
nn_network_to_use	NN network to use
network_name	NN network name
name	name of clustering
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
...	additional parameters

Details

Description of iterative clustering.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
iterCluster(gobject)
```

iterLeidenCluster	<i>iterLeidenCluster</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

cluster cells iteratively

Usage

```
iterLeidenCluster(  
  gobject,  
  name = "iter_clus",  
  nr_rounds = 5,  
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_variance = 1, expression_values  
    = "normalized"),  
  hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,  
  hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,  
  use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,  
  min_nr_of_hvg = 5,  
  pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),  
  nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),  
  k_neighbors = 20,  
  resolution = 1,  
  n_iterations = 1000,  
  python_path = NULL,
```

```

    nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
    network_name = "sNN.pca",
    return_gobject = TRUE,
    ...
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name of clustering
<code>nr_rounds</code>	number of iterative rounds
<code>hvg_param</code>	parameters for calculateHVG
<code>hvg_min_perc_cells</code>	threshold for detection in min percentage of cells
<code>hvg_mean_expr_det</code>	threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection
<code>use_all_genes_as_hvg</code>	forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA
<code>min_nr_of_hvg</code>	minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA
<code>pca_param</code>	parameters for runPCA
<code>nn_param</code>	parameters for parameters for runPCA
<code>k_neighbors</code>	k for nn-network
<code>resolution</code>	resolution for Leiden clustering
<code>n_iterations</code>	number of iterations for Leiden clustering
<code>python_path</code>	python path to use for Leiden clustering
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	NN network to use
<code>network_name</code>	NN network name
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
<code>...</code>	additional parameters

Details

Description of iterative clustering.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
iterLeidenCluster(gobject)
```

iterLouvainCluster	<i>iterLouvainCluster</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

Description

cluster cells iteratively

Usage

```
iterLouvainCluster(
  gobject,
  version = c("community", "multinet"),
  nr_rounds = 5,
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_variance = 1, expression_values
    = "normalized"),
  hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,
  hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,
  use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,
  min_nr_of_hvg = 5,
  pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),
  nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),
  k_neighbors = 20,
  resolution = 1,
  gamma = 1,
  omega = 1,
  python_path = NULL,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  name = "iter_clus",
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>version</code>	louvain clustering algorithm to use
<code>nr_rounds</code>	number of iterative rounds
<code>hvg_param</code>	parameters for calculateHVG
<code>hvg_min_perc_cells</code>	threshold for detection in min percentage of cells
<code>hvg_mean_expr_det</code>	threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection
<code>use_all_genes_as_hvg</code>	forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA
<code>min_nr_of_hvg</code>	minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA
<code>pca_param</code>	parameters for runPCA
<code>nn_param</code>	parameters for parameters for runPCA

k_neighbors	k for nn-network
resolution	resolution
gamma	gamma
omega	omega
python_path	python path to use for Leiden clustering
nn_network_to_use	NN network to use
network_name	NN network name
name	name of clustering
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
...	additional parameters

Details

Description of iterative clustering.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
iterLouvainCluster(gobject)
```

```
iterLouvainCluster_community
      iterLouvainCluster_community
```

Description

cluster cells iteratively

Usage

```
iterLouvainCluster_community(
  gobject,
  nr_rounds = 5,
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_variance = 1, expression_values
    = "normalized"),
  hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,
  hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,
  use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,
  min_nr_of_hvg = 5,
  pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),
  nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),
  k_neighbors = 20,
  resolution = 1,
  python_path = NULL,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
```

```

    network_name = "sNN.pca",
    name = "iter_clus",
    return_gobject = TRUE,
    ...
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>nr_rounds</code>	number of iterative rounds
<code>hvg_param</code>	parameters for calculateHVG
<code>hvg_min_perc_cells</code>	threshold for detection in min percentage of cells
<code>hvg_mean_expr_det</code>	threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection
<code>use_all_genes_as_hvg</code>	forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA
<code>min_nr_of_hvg</code>	minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA
<code>pca_param</code>	parameters for runPCA
<code>nn_param</code>	parameters for parameters for runPCA
<code>k_neighbors</code>	k for nn-network
<code>resolution</code>	resolution for Leiden clustering
<code>python_path</code>	python path to use for Leiden clustering
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	NN network to use
<code>network_name</code>	NN network name
<code>name</code>	name of clustering
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
<code>...</code>	additional parameters

Details

Description of iterative clustering.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
iterLouvainCluster_community(gobject)
```

```
iterLouvainCluster_multinet
      iterLouvainCluster_multinet
```

Description

cluster cells iteratively

Usage

```
iterLouvainCluster_multinet(
  gobject,
  nr_rounds = 5,
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_variance = 1, expression_values
    = "normalized"),
  hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,
  hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,
  use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,
  min_nr_of_hvg = 5,
  pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),
  nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),
  k_neighbors = 20,
  gamma = 1,
  omega = 1,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  name = "iter_clus",
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
nr_rounds	number of iterative rounds
hvg_param	parameters for calculateHVG
hvg_min_perc_cells	threshold for detection in min percentage of cells
hvg_mean_expr_det	threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection
use_all_genes_as_hvg	forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA
min_nr_of_hvg	minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA
pca_param	parameters for runPCA
nn_param	parameters for parameters for runPCA
k_neighbors	k for nn-network
gamma	gamma
omega	omega

nn_network_to_use NN network to use
network_name NN network name
name name of clustering
return_gobject boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
... additional parameters
python_path python path to use for Leiden clustering

Details

Description of iterative clustering.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
iterLouvainCluster_multinet(gobject)
```

kmeans_binarize	<i>kmeans_binarize</i>
-----------------	------------------------

Description

create binarized scores using kmeans

Usage

```
kmeans_binarize(x, nstart = 3, iter.max = 10)
```

loadHMRF	<i>loadHMRF</i>
----------	-----------------

Description

load previous HMRF

Usage

```
loadHMRF(  
  name_used = "test",  
  output_folder_used,  
  k_used = 10,  
  betas_used,  
  python_path_used  
)
```

Arguments

name_used	name of HMRF that was run
output_folder_used	output folder that was used
k_used	number of HMRF domains that was tested
betas_used	betas that were tested
python_path_used	python path that was used

Details

Description of HMRF parameters ...

Value

reloads a previous ran HMRF from doHRMF

Examples

```
loadHMRF(gobject)
```

makeSignMatrixPAGE	<i>makeSignMatrixPAGE</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

Description

Function to convert list of signature genes (e.g. for cell types or processes) into a binary matrix format that can be used with the PAGE enrichment option.

Usage

```
makeSignMatrixPAGE(sign_names, sign_list)
```

Arguments

sign_names	vector with names for each provided gene signature
sign_list	list of genes (signature)

Value

matrix

See Also

[PAGEEnrich](#)

Examples

```
makeSignMatrixPAGE()
```

makeSignMatrixRank	<i>makeSignMatrixRank</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

Description

Function to convert a single-cell count matrix and a corresponding single-cell cluster vector into a rank matrix that can be used with the Rank enrichment option.

Usage

```
makeSignMatrixRank(sc_matrix, sc_cluster_ids, gobject = NULL)
```

Arguments

sign_names	vector with names for each provided gene signature
sign_list	list of genes (signature)

Value

matrix

See Also

[rankEnrich](#)

Examples

```
makeSignMatrixRank()
```

make_simulated_network	<i>make_simulated_network</i>
------------------------	-------------------------------

Description

Simulate random network.

Usage

```
make_simulated_network(
  gobject,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  cluster_column,
  number_of_simulations = 100
)
```

Examples

```
make_simulated_network(gobject)
```

mergeClusters	<i>mergeClusters</i>
---------------	----------------------

Description

Merge selected clusters based on pairwise correlation scores and size of cluster.

Usage

```
mergeClusters(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  cor = c("pearson", "spearman"),
  new_cluster_name = "merged_cluster",
  min_cor_score = 0.8,
  max_group_size = 20,
  force_min_group_size = 10,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
cluster_column	name of column to use for clusters
cor	correlation score to calculate distance
new_cluster_name	new name for merged clusters
min_cor_score	min correlation score to merge pairwise clusters
max_group_size	max cluster size that can be merged
force_min_group_size	size of clusters that will be merged with their most similar neighbor(s)
return_gobject	return giotto object
verbose	be verbose

Details

Merge selected clusters based on pairwise correlation scores and size of cluster. To avoid large clusters to merge the `max_group_size` can be lowered. Small clusters can be forcibly merged with their most similar pairwise cluster by adjusting the `force_min_group_size` parameter. Clusters smaller than this value will be merged independent on the provided `min_cor_score` value. A giotto object is returned by default, if FALSE then the merging vector will be returned.

Value

Giotto object

Examples

```
mergeClusters(gobject)
```

mygini_fun	<i>mygini_fun</i>
------------	-------------------

Description

calculate gini coefficient

Usage

```
mygini_fun(x, weights = rep(1, length(x)))
```

Value

gini coefficient

nnDT_to_kNN	<i>nnDT_to_kNN</i>
-------------	--------------------

Description

Convert a nearest network data.table to a kNN object

Usage

```
nnDT_to_kNN(nnDT)
```

Arguments

nnDT	nearest neighbor network in data.table format
------	---

Value

kNN object

node_clusters	<i>node_clusters</i>
---------------	----------------------

Description

Merge selected clusters based on pairwise correlation scores and size of cluster.

Usage

```
node_clusters(hclus_obj, verbose = TRUE)
```

Arguments

hclus_obj	hclus object
verbose	be verbose

Value

list of splitted dendrogram nodes from high to low node height

Examples

```
node_clusters(hclus_obj)
```

normalizeGiotto	<i>normalizeGiotto</i>
-----------------	------------------------

Description

normalize and/or scale expresion values of Giotto object

Usage

```
normalizeGiotto(
  gobject,
  norm_methods = c("standard", "osmFISH"),
  library_size_norm = TRUE,
  scalefactor = 6000,
  log_norm = TRUE,
  logbase = 2,
  scale_genes = T,
  scale_cells = T,
  scale_order = c("first_genes", "first_cells"),
  verbose = F
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>norm_methods</code>	normalization method to use
<code>library_size_norm</code>	normalize cells by library size
<code>scalefactor</code>	scale factor to use after library size normalization
<code>log_norm</code>	transform values to log-scale
<code>logbase</code>	log base to use to log normalize expression values
<code>scale_genes</code>	z-score genes over all cells
<code>scale_cells</code>	z-score cells over all genes
<code>scale_order</code>	order to scale genes and cells
<code>verbose</code>	be verbose

Details

Currently there are two 'methods' to normalize your raw counts data.

A. The standard method follows the standard protocol which can be adjusted using the provided parameters and follows the following order:

- 1. Data normalization for total library size and scaling by a custom scale-factor.
- 2. Log transformation of data.
- 3. Z-scoring of data by genes and/or cells.

B. The normalization method as provided by the osmFISH paper is also implemented:

- 1. First normalize genes, for each gene divide the counts by the total gene count and multiply by the total number of genes.
- 2. Next normalize cells, for each cell divide the normalized gene counts by the total counts per cell and multiply by the total number of cells.

This data will be saved in the Giotto slot for custom expression.

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
normalizeGiotto(gobject)
```

OR_function2

OR_function2

Description

calculate odds-ratio

Usage

```
OR_function2(A, B, C, D)
```

PAGEEnrich

PAGEEnrich

Description

Function to calculate gene signature enrichment scores per spatial position using PAGE.

Usage

```
PAGEEnrich(
  gobject,
  sign_matrix,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reverse_log_scale = TRUE,
  logbase = 2,
  output_enrichment = c("original", "zscore")
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	Giotto object
<code>sign_matrix</code>	Matrix of signature genes for each cell type / process
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>reverse_log_scale</code>	reverse expression values from log scale
<code>logbase</code>	log base to use if <code>reverse_log_scale = TRUE</code>
<code>output_enrichment</code>	how to return enrichment output

Details

The enrichment Z score is calculated by using method (PAGE) from Kim SY et al., BMC bioinformatics, 2005 as $Z = ((Sm - \mu) * m^{1/2}) / \delta$. For each gene in each spot, μ is the fold change values versus the mean expression and δ is the standard deviation. Sm is the mean fold change value of a specific marker gene set and m is the size of a given marker gene set.

Value

data.table with enrichment results

Examples

```
PAGEEnrich(gobject)
```

pDataDT	<i>pDataDT</i>
---------	----------------

Description

show cell metadata

Usage

pDataDT(gobject)

Arguments

gobject giotto object

Value

data.table with cell metadata

Examples

pDataDT(gobject)

plotCPGscores	<i>plotCPGscores</i>
---------------	----------------------

Description

Create heatmap from cell-cell proximity scores

Usage

```
plotCPGscores(  
  CPGscores,  
  selected_interactions = NULL,  
  selected_genes = NULL,  
  detail_plot = T,  
  simple_plot = F,  
  simple_plot_facet = c("interaction", "genes"),  
  facet_scales = "fixed",  
  facet_ncol = length(selected_genes),  
  facet_nrow = length(selected_interactions),  
  show_plot = F  
)
```

Arguments

CPGscores CPGscores, output from getCellProximityGeneScores()
selected_interactions interactions to show
selected_genes genes to show
detail_plot show detailed info in both interacting cell types
simple_plot show a simplified plot
simple_plot_facet facet on interactions or genes with simple plot
facet_scales ggplot facet scales paramter
facet_ncol ggplot facet ncol parameter
facet_nrow ggplot facet nrow parameter
show_plot show plot

Details

Give more details ...

Value

ggplot barplot

Examples

plotCPGscores(CPGscores)

plotGTGscores	<i>plotGTGscores</i>
---------------	----------------------

Description

Create heatmap from cell-cell proximity scores

Usage

```
plotGTGscores(  
  gobject,  
  GTGscore,  
  selected_interactions = NULL,  
  selected_gene_to_gene = NULL,  
  detail_plot = T,  
  simple_plot = F,  
  simple_plot_facet = c("interaction", "genes"),  
  facet_scales = "fixed",  
  facet_ncol = length(selected_gene_to_gene),  
  facet_nrow = length(selected_interactions),  
  colors = c("blue", "red"),  
  show_plot = NA,  
  return_plot = NA,
```

```

    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "plotGTGscores"
  )

```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
GTGscore	GTGscore, output from getGeneToGeneScores()
selected_interactions	interactions to show
detail_plot	show detailed info in both interacting cell types
simple_plot	show a simplified plot
simple_plot_facet	facet on interactions or genes with simple plot
facet_scales	ggplot facet scales paramter
facet_ncol	ggplot facet ncol parameter
facet_nrow	ggplot facet nrow parameter
colors	vector with 2 colors to represent respectively all and selected cells
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
selected_genes	genes to show

Details

Give more details ...

Value

ggplot barplot

Examples

```
plotGTGscores(GTGscore)
```

plotHeatmap

*plotHeatmap***Description**

creates order for clusters

Usage

```
plotHeatmap(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  cluster_order = c("size", "correlation", "custom"),
  cluster_custom_order = NULL,
  cluster_color_code = NULL,
  cluster_cor_method = "pearson",
  cluster_hclust_method = "ward.D",
  gene_order = c("custom", "correlation"),
  gene_custom_order = NULL,
  gene_cor_method = "pearson",
  gene_hclust_method = "complete",
  show_values = c("rescaled", "z-scaled", "original"),
  size_vertical_lines = 1.1,
  gradient_colors = c("blue", "yellow", "red"),
  gene_label_selection = NULL,
  axis_text_y_size = NULL,
  legend_nrows = 1,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "plotHeatmap"
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
genes	genes to use
cluster_column	name of column to use for clusters
cluster_order	method to determine cluster order
cluster_custom_order	custom order for clusters
cluster_color_code	color code for clusters
cluster_cor_method	method for cluster correlation

cluster_hclust_method	method for hierarchical clustering of clusters
gene_order	method to determine gene order
gene_custom_order	custom order for genes
gene_cor_method	method for gene correlation
gene_hclust_method	method for hierarchical clustering of genes
show_values	which values to show on heatmap
size_vertical_lines	sizes for vertical lines
gradient_colors	colors for heatmap gradient
gene_label_selection	subset of genes to show on y-axis
axis_text_y_size	size for y-axis text
legend_nrows	number of rows for the cluster legend
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Creates heatmap for genes and clusters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
plotHeatmap(gobject)
```

plotly_axis_scale_2D *plotly_axis_scale_2D*

Description

adjust the axis scale in 3D plotly plot

Usage

```
plotly_axis_scale_2D(
  cell_locations,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  mode = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL
)
```

Arguments

cell_locations	spatial_loc in giotto object
sdimx	x axis of cell spatial location
sdimy	y axis of cell spatial location
mode	axis adjustment mode
custom_ratio	set the ratio artificially

Value

edges in spatial grid as data.table()

Examples

```
plotly_axis_scale_2D(gobject)
```

plotly_axis_scale_3D *plotly_axis_scale_3D*

Description

adjust the axis scale in 3D plotly plot

Usage

```
plotly_axis_scale_3D(
  cell_locations,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  sdimz = NULL,
  mode = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL
)
```

Arguments

cell_locations	spatial_loc in giotto object
sdimx	x axis of cell spatial location
sdimy	y axis of cell spatial location
sdimz	z axis of cell spatial location
mode	axis adjustment mode
custom_ratio	set the ratio artificially

Value

edges in spatial grid as data.table()

Examples

```
plotly_axis_scale_3D(gobject)
```

plotly_grid	<i>plotly_grid</i>
-------------	--------------------

Description

provide grid segment to draw in plot_ly()

Usage

```
plotly_grid(  
  spatial_grid,  
  x_start = "x_start",  
  y_start = "y_start",  
  x_end = "x_end",  
  y_end = "y_end"  
)
```

Arguments

spatial_grid spatial_grid in giotto object

Value

edges in spatial grid as data.table()

Examples

```
plotly_grid(gobject)
```

plotly_network	<i>plotly_network</i>
----------------	-----------------------

Description

provide network segment to draw in 3D plot_ly()

Usage

```

plotly_network(
  network,
  x = "sdimx_begin",
  y = "sdimy_begin",
  z = "sdimz_begin",
  x_end = "sdimx_end",
  y_end = "sdimy_end",
  z_end = "sdimz_end"
)

```

Arguments

`gobject` network in giotto object

Value

edges in network as `data.table()`

Examples

```
plotly_network(gobject)
```

`plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap`

plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap

Description

creates order for clusters

Usage

```

plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap(
  gobject,
  metadata_cols = NULL,
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  value_cols = NULL,
  first_meta_col = NULL,
  second_meta_col = NULL,
  show_values = c("zscores", "original", "zscores_rescaled"),
  custom_cluster_order = NULL,
  clus_cor_method = "pearson",
  clus_cluster_method = "complete",
  custom_values_order = NULL,
  values_cor_method = "pearson",
  values_cluster_method = "complete",
  midpoint = 0,
  x_text_size = 8,
  x_text_angle = 45,
  y_text_size = 8,

```

```

strip_text_size = 8,
show_plot = NA,
return_plot = NA,
save_plot = NA,
save_param = list(),
default_save_name = "plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>metadata_cols</code>	annotation columns found in <code>pDataDT(gobject)</code>
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	spatial enrichment results to include
<code>value_cols</code>	value columns to use
<code>first_meta_col</code>	if more than 1 metadata column, select the x-axis factor
<code>second_meta_col</code>	if more than 1 metadata column, select the facetting factor
<code>show_values</code>	which values to show on heatmap
<code>custom_cluster_order</code>	custom cluster order (default = NULL)
<code>clus_cor_method</code>	correlation method for clusters
<code>clus_cluster_method</code>	hierarchical cluster method for the clusters
<code>midpoint</code>	midpoint of <code>show_values</code>
<code>x_text_size</code>	size of x-axis text
<code>x_text_angle</code>	angle of x-axis text
<code>y_text_size</code>	size of y-axis text
<code>strip_text_size</code>	size of strip text
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <code>all_plots_save_function()</code>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>
<code>custom_gene_order</code>	custom gene order (default = NULL)
<code>gene_cor_method</code>	correlation method for genes
<code>gene_cluster_method</code>	hierarchical cluster method for the genes

Details

Creates heatmap for the average values of selected value columns in the different annotation groups

Value

ggplot or data.table

Examples

```
plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap(gobject)
```

plotMetaDataHeatmap	<i>plotMetaDataHeatmap</i>
---------------------	----------------------------

Description

creates order for clusters

Usage

```
plotMetaDataHeatmap(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  metadata_cols = NULL,
  selected_genes = NULL,
  first_meta_col = NULL,
  second_meta_col = NULL,
  show_values = c("zscores", "original", "zscores_rescaled"),
  custom_cluster_order = NULL,
  clus_cor_method = "pearson",
  clus_cluster_method = "complete",
  custom_gene_order = NULL,
  gene_cor_method = "pearson",
  gene_cluster_method = "complete",
  midpoint = 0,
  x_text_size = 10,
  x_text_angle = 45,
  y_text_size = 10,
  strip_text_size = 8,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "plotMetaDataHeatmap"
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
metadata_cols	annotation columns found in pDataDT(gobject)
selected_genes	subset of genes to use
first_meta_col	if more than 1 metadata column, select the x-axis factor

<code>second_meta_col</code>	if more than 1 metadata column, select the facetting factor
<code>show_values</code>	which values to show on heatmap
<code>custom_cluster_order</code>	custom cluster order (default = NULL)
<code>clus_cor_method</code>	correlation method for clusters
<code>clus_cluster_method</code>	hierarchical cluster method for the clusters
<code>custom_gene_order</code>	custom gene order (default = NULL)
<code>gene_cor_method</code>	correlation method for genes
<code>gene_cluster_method</code>	hierarchical cluster method for the genes
<code>midpoint</code>	midpoint of <code>show_values</code>
<code>x_text_size</code>	size of x-axis text
<code>x_text_angle</code>	angle of x-axis text
<code>y_text_size</code>	size of y-axis text
<code>strip_text_size</code>	size of strip text
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <code>all_plots_save_function()</code>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

Details

Creates heatmap for average the average expression of selected genes in the different annotation groups

Value

ggplot or data.table

Examples

```
plotMetaDataHeatmap(gobject)
```

plotPCA

*plotPCA***Description**

Short wrapper for PCA visualization

Usage

```
plotPCA(gobject, dim_reduction_name = "pca", default_save_name = "PCA", ...)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
dim_reduction_name	dimension reduction name
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
dim1_to_use	dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use	dimension to use on y-axis
spat_enr_names	names of spatial enrichment results to include
show_NN_network	show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
cell_color	color for cells (see details)
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
cell_color_gradient	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
gradient_midpoint	midpoint for color gradient
gradient_limits	vector with lower and upper limits
select_cell_groups	select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
other_point_size	size of not selected cells
show_cluster_center	plot center of selected clusters

show_center_label	plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size	size of center points
label_size	size of labels
label_fontface	font of labels
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
point_size	size of point (cell)
point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()

Details

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [plotPCA_3D](#)

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
plotPCA(gobject)
```

plotPCA_2D

plotPCA_2D

Description

Short wrapper for PCA visualization

Usage

```
plotPCA_2D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",
  default_save_name = "PCA_2D",
  ...
)
```


Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network</code> = TRUE
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells
<code>other_cell_color</code>	color of not selected cells
<code>other_point_size</code>	size of not selected cells
<code>show_cluster_center</code>	plot center of selected clusters
<code>show_center_label</code>	plot label of selected clusters
<code>center_point_size</code>	size of center points
<code>label_size</code>	size of labels
<code>label_fontface</code>	font of labels
<code>edge_alpha</code>	column to use for alpha of the edges
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>point_border_col</code>	color of border around points

point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()

Details

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [plotPCA_3D](#)

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
plotPCA_2D(gobject)
```

plotPCA_3D	<i>plotPCA_3D</i>
------------	-------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to 3D PCA dimension reduction

Usage

```
plotPCA_3D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",
  default_save_name = "PCA_3D",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
dim_reduction_name	pca dimension reduction name
default_save_name	default save name for saving, ideally change save_name in save_param
dim1_to_use	dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use	dimension to use on y-axis
dim3_to_use	dimension to use on z-axis
show_NN_network	show underlying NN network

nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
cell_color	color for cells (see details)
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
select_cell_groups	select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
other_point_size	size of not selected cells
show_cluster_center	plot center of selected clusters
show_center_label	plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size	size of center points
label_size	size of labels
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
point_size	size of point (cell)
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
plotPCA_3D(gobject)
```

plotTSNE

plotTSNE

Description

Short wrapper for tSNE visualization

Usage

```
plotTSNE(gobject, dim_reduction_name = "tsne", default_save_name = "tSNE", ...)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network</code> = TRUE
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells
<code>other_cell_color</code>	color of not selected cells
<code>other_point_size</code>	size of not selected cells
<code>show_cluster_center</code>	plot center of selected clusters

show_center_label	plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size	size of center points
label_size	size of labels
label_fontface	font of labels
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
point_size	size of point (cell)
point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()

Details

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [plotTSNE_3D](#)

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
plotTSNE(gobject)
```

plotTSNE_2D	<i>plotTSNE_2D</i>
-------------	--------------------

Description

Short wrapper for tSNE visualization

Usage

```
plotTSNE_2D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_name = "tsne",
  default_save_name = "tSNE_2D",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network</code> = TRUE
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells
<code>other_cell_color</code>	color of not selected cells
<code>other_point_size</code>	size of not selected cells
<code>show_cluster_center</code>	plot center of selected clusters
<code>show_center_label</code>	plot label of selected clusters
<code>center_point_size</code>	size of center points
<code>label_size</code>	size of labels
<code>label_fontface</code>	font of labels
<code>edge_alpha</code>	column to use for alpha of the edges
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>point_border_col</code>	color of border around points

point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()

Details

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [plotTSNE_3D](#)

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
plotTSNE_2D(gobject)
```

plotTSNE_3D

plotTSNE_3D

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
plotTSNE_3D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_name = "tsne",
  default_save_name = "TSNE_3D",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
dim_reduction_name	tsne dimension reduction name
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
dim1_to_use	dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use	dimension to use on y-axis
dim3_to_use	dimension to use on z-axis
show_NN_network	show underlying NN network

nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
cell_color	color for cells (see details)
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
select_cell_groups	select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
other_point_size	size of not selected cells
show_cluster_center	plot center of selected clusters
show_center_label	plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size	size of center points
label_size	size of labels
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
point_size	size of point (cell)
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
plotTSNE_3D(gobject)
```

plotUMAP

plotUMAP

Description

Short wrapper for UMAP visualization

Usage

```
plotUMAP(gobject, dim_reduction_name = "umap", default_save_name = "UMAP", ...)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network</code> = TRUE
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells
<code>other_cell_color</code>	color of not selected cells
<code>other_point_size</code>	size of not selected cells
<code>show_cluster_center</code>	plot center of selected clusters

<code>show_center_label</code>	plot label of selected clusters
<code>center_point_size</code>	size of center points
<code>label_size</code>	size of labels
<code>label_fontface</code>	font of labels
<code>edge_alpha</code>	column to use for alpha of the edges
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>point_border_col</code>	color of border around points
<code>point_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of border around points
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <code>all_plots_save_function()</code>

Details

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [plotUMAP_3D](#)

Value

ggplot

Examples

`plotUMAP(gobject)`

<code>plotUMAP_2D</code>	<i>plotUMAP_2D</i>
--------------------------	--------------------

Description

Short wrapper for UMAP visualization

Usage

```
plotUMAP_2D(  
  gobject,  
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",  
  default_save_name = "UMAP_2D",  
  ...  
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network</code> = TRUE
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells
<code>other_cell_color</code>	color of not selected cells
<code>other_point_size</code>	size of not selected cells
<code>show_cluster_center</code>	plot center of selected clusters
<code>show_center_label</code>	plot label of selected clusters
<code>center_point_size</code>	size of center points
<code>label_size</code>	size of labels
<code>label_fontface</code>	font of labels
<code>edge_alpha</code>	column to use for alpha of the edges
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>point_border_col</code>	color of border around points

point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()

Details

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [plotUMAP_3D](#)

Value

ggplot

Examples

plotUMAP_2D(gobject)

plotUMAP_3D	<i>plotUMAP_3D</i>
-------------	--------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
plotUMAP_3D(  
  gobject,  
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",  
  default_save_name = "UMAP_3D",  
  ...  
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
dim_reduction_name	umap dimension reduction name
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
dim1_to_use	dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use	dimension to use on y-axis
dim3_to_use	dimension to use on z-axis
show_NN_network	show underlying NN network

nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
cell_color	color for cells (see details)
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
select_cell_groups	select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
other_point_size	size of not selected cells
show_cluster_center	plot center of selected clusters
show_center_label	plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size	size of center points
label_size	size of labels
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
point_size	size of point (cell)
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
plotUMAP_3D(gobject)
```

```
plot_network_layer_ggplot
      plot_network_layer_ggplot
```

Description

Visualize cells in network layer according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
plot_network_layer_ggplot(
  gobject,
  annotated_network_DT,
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  show_legend = T
)
```

Arguments

annotated_network_DT	annotated network data.table of selected cells
edge_alpha	alpha of network edges
show_legend	show legend
gobject	giotto object

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
plot_network_layer_ggplot(gobject)
```

```
plot_point_layer_ggplot
      plot_point_layer_ggplot
```

Description

Visualize cells in point layer according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```

plot_point_layer_ggplot(
  ggobject,
  annotated_DT_selected,
  annotated_DT_other,
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = 0,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  point_size = 1,
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
  center_point_size = 4,
  center_point_border_col = "black",
  center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  label_size = 4,
  label_fontface = "bold",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 0.5,
  show_legend = T
)

```

Arguments

annotated_DT_selected	annotated data.table of selected cells
annotated_DT_other	annotated data.table of not selected cells
cell_color	color for cells (see details)
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
cell_color_gradient	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
gradient_midpoint	midpoint for color gradient
gradient_limits	vector with lower and upper limits
select_cell_groups	select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
point_size	size of point (cell)

point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
show_cluster_center	plot center of selected clusters
show_center_label	plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size	size of center points
label_size	size of labels
label_fontface	font of labels
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
other_point_size	size of not selected cells
show_legend	show legend
gobject	giotto object

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
plot_point_layer_ggplot(gobject)
```

```
plot_spat_point_layer_ggplot
  plot_spat_point_layer_ggplot
```

Description

creat ggplot point layer for spatial coordinates

Usage

```

plot_spat_point_layer_ggplot(
  ggobject,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  cell_locations_metadata_selected,
  cell_locations_metadata_other,
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  point_size = 2,
  point_border_col = "lightgrey",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
  center_point_size = 4,
  center_point_border_col = "black",
  center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  label_size = 4,
  label_fontface = "bold",
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 1,
  show_legend = TRUE
)

```

Arguments

sdimx	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
sdimy	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
cell_locations_metadata_selected	annotated location from selected cells
cell_locations_metadata_other	annotated location from non-selected cells
cell_color	color for cells (see details)
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
cell_color_gradient	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
gradient_midpoint	midpoint for color gradient
gradient_limits	vector with lower and upper limits

select_cell_groups	select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
point_size	size of point (cell)
point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
show_cluster_center	plot center of selected clusters
show_center_label	plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size	size of center points
label_size	size of labels
label_fontface	font of labels
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color for not selected cells
other_point_size	point size for not selected cells
show_legend	show legend
gobject	giotto object

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
plot_spat_point_layer_ggplot(gobject)
```

print.giotto	<i>print method for giotto class</i>
--------------	--------------------------------------

Description

print method for giotto class. Prints the chosen number of genes (rows) and cells (columns) from the raw count matrix. Also print the spatial locations for the chosen number of cells.

Usage

```
print.giotto(object, ...)
```

Arguments

nr_genes	number of genes (rows) to print
nr_cells	number of cells (columns) to print

rankEnrich	<i>rankEnrich</i>
------------	-------------------

Description

Function to calculate gene signature enrichment scores per spatial position using a rank based approach.

Usage

```
rankEnrich(
  gobject,
  sign_matrix,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reverse_log_scale = TRUE,
  logbase = 2,
  output_enrichment = c("original", "zscore")
)
```

Arguments

gobject	Giotto object
sign_matrix	Matrix of signature genes for each cell type / process
expression_values	expression values to use
reverse_log_scale	reverse expression values from log scale
logbase	log base to use if reverse_log_scale = TRUE
output_enrichment	how to return enrichment output

Details

First a new rank is calculated as $R = (R1 * R2)^{(1/2)}$, where R1 is the rank of fold-change for each gene in each spot and R2 is the rank of each marker in each cell type. The Rank-Biased Precision is then calculated as: $RBP = (1 - 0.99) * (0.99)^{(R - 1)}$ and the final enrichment score is then calculated as the sum of top 100 RBPs.

Value

data.table with enrichment results

Examples

```
rankEnrich(gobject)
```

rank_binarize	<i>rank_binarize</i>
---------------	----------------------

Description

create binarized scores using arbitrary rank of top genes

Usage

```
rank_binarize(x, max_rank = 200)
```

readGiottoInstructions	<i>readGiottoInstructions</i>
------------------------	-------------------------------

Description

Retrieves the instruction associated with the provided parameter

Usage

```
readGiottoInstructions(giotto_instructions, param = NULL)
```

Arguments

giotto_instructions	giotto object or result from createGiottoInstructions()
param	parameter to retrieve

Value

specific parameter

Examples

```
readGiottoInstructions()
```

removeCellAnnotation	<i>removeCellAnnotation</i>
----------------------	-----------------------------

Description

removes cell annotation of giotto object

Usage

```
removeCellAnnotation(gobject, columns = NULL, return_gobject = TRUE)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
columns	names of columns to remove
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

Details

if return_gobject = FALSE, it will return the cell metadata

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
removeCellAnnotation(gobject)
```

removeGeneAnnotation	<i>removeGeneAnnotation</i>
----------------------	-----------------------------

Description

removes gene annotation of giotto object

Usage

```
removeGeneAnnotation(gobject, columns = NULL, return_gobject = TRUE)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
columns	names of columns to remove
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

Details

if return_gobject = FALSE, it will return the gene metadata

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
removeGeneAnnotation(gobject)
```

```
replaceGiottoInstructions
      replaceGiottoInstructions
```

Description

Function to replace all instructions from giotto object

Usage

```
replaceGiottoInstructions(gobject, instructions = NULL)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
instructions	new instructions (e.g. result from createGiottoInstructions)

Value

named vector with giotto instructions

Examples

```
replaceGiottoInstructions()
```

runPCA	<i>runPCA</i>
--------	---------------

Description

runs a Principal Component Analysis

Usage

```
runPCA(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reduction = c("cells", "genes"),
  name = "pca",
  genes_to_use = NULL,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  scale_unit = F,
  ncp = 200,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>reduction</code>	cells or genes
<code>name</code>	arbitrary name for PCA run
<code>genes_to_use</code>	subset of genes to use for PCA
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
<code>scale_unit</code>	scale features before PCA
<code>ncp</code>	number of principal components to calculate
<code>...</code>	additional parameters for PCA (see details)

Details

See [PCA](#) for more information about other parameters.

Value

giotto object with updated PCA dimension reduction

Examples

```
runPCA(gobject)
```

runtSNE

runtSNE

Description

run tSNE

Usage

```
runtSNE(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reduction = c("cells", "genes"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "pca",
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",
  dimensions_to_use = 1:10,
  name = "tsne",
  genes_to_use = NULL,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  dims = 2,
  perplexity = 30,
  theta = 0.5,
  do_PCA_first = F,
  set_seed = T,
  seed_number = 1234,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>reduction</code>	cells or genes
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	use another dimension reduction set as input
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	name of dimension reduction set to use
<code>dimensions_to_use</code>	number of dimensions to use as input
<code>name</code>	arbitrary name for tSNE run
<code>genes_to_use</code>	if <code>dim_reduction_to_use = NULL</code> , which genes to use
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
<code>dims</code>	tSNE param: number of dimensions to return
<code>perplexity</code>	tSNE param: perplexity
<code>theta</code>	tSNE param: theta
<code>do_PCA_first</code>	tSNE param: do PCA before tSNE (default = FALSE)
<code>set_seed</code>	use of seed
<code>seed_number</code>	seed number to use
<code>...</code>	additional tSNE parameters

Details

See [Rtsne](#) for more information about these and other parameters.

- Input for tSNE dimension reduction can be another dimension reduction (default = 'pca')
- To use gene expression as input set `dim_reduction_to_use = NULL`
- multiple tSNE results can be stored by changing the *name* of the analysis

Value

giotto object with updated tSNE dimension reduction

Examples

```
runtSNE(gobject)
```


runUMAP

*runUMAP***Description**

run UMAP

Usage

```
runUMAP(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reduction = c("cells", "genes"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "pca",
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",
  dimensions_to_use = 1:10,
  name = "umap",
  genes_to_use = NULL,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  n_neighbors = 40,
  n_components = 2,
  n_epochs = 400,
  min_dist = 0.01,
  n_threads = 1,
  spread = 5,
  set_seed = T,
  seed_number = 1234,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>reduction</code>	cells or genes
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	use another dimension reduction set as input
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	name of dimension reduction set to use
<code>dimensions_to_use</code>	number of dimensions to use as input
<code>name</code>	arbitrary name for UMAP run
<code>genes_to_use</code>	if <code>dim_reduction_to_use = NULL</code> , which genes to use
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
<code>n_neighbors</code>	UMAP param: number of neighbors
<code>n_components</code>	UMAP param: number of components
<code>n_epochs</code>	UMAP param: number of epochs

min_dist	UMAP param: minimum distance
n_threads	UMAP param: threads to use
spread	UMAP param: spread
set_seed	use of seed
seed_number	seed number to use
...	additional UMAP parameters

Details

See [umap](#) for more information about these and other parameters.

- Input for UMAP dimension reduction can be another dimension reduction (default = 'pca')
- To use gene expression as input set `dim_reduction_to_use = NULL`
- multiple UMAP results can be stored by changing the *name* of the analysis

Value

giotto object with updated UMAP dimension reduction

Examples

```
runUMAP(gobject)
```

selectPatternGenes	<i>selectPatternGenes</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

Description

Select genes correlated with spatial patterns

Usage

```
selectPatternGenes(
  spatPatObj,
  dimensions = 1:5,
  top_pos_genes = 10,
  top_neg_genes = 10,
  min_pos_cor = 0.5,
  min_neg_cor = -0.5,
  return_top_selection = FALSE
)
```

Arguments

spatPatObj	Output from detectSpatialPatterns
dimensions	dimensions to identify correlated genes for.
top_pos_genes	Top positively correlated genes.
top_neg_genes	Top negatively correlated genes.
min_pos_cor	Minimum positive correlation score to include a gene.
min_neg_cor	Minimum negative correlation score to include a gene.

Details

Description.

Value

Data.table with genes associated with selected dimension (PC).

Examples

```
selectPatternGenes(gobject)
```

```
select_expression_values  
      select_expression_values
```

Description

helper function to select expression values

Usage

```
select_expression_values(gobject, values)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
values	expression values to extract

Value

expression matrix

```
show,giotto-method      show method for giotto class
```

Description

show method for giotto class

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'giotto'  
show(object)
```

showClusterDendrogram *showClusterDendrogram*

Description

Creates dendrogram based on identified clusters

Usage

```
showClusterDendrogram(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  cor = c("pearson", "spearman"),
  distance = "ward.D",
  h = NULL,
  h_color = "red",
  rotate = FALSE,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "showClusterDendrogram",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	name of column to use for clusters
<code>cor</code>	correlation score to calculate distance
<code>distance</code>	distance method to use for hierarchical clustering
<code>h</code>	height of horizontal lines to plot
<code>h_color</code>	color of horizontal lines
<code>rotate</code>	rotate dendrogram 90 degrees
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <code>all_plots_save_function()</code>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>
<code>...</code>	additional parameters for <code>ggdendrogram()</code>

Details

Correlation dendrogram of selected clustering.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
showClusterDendrogram(gobject)
```

showClusterHeatmap	<i>showClusterHeatmap</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

Description

Creates heatmap based on identified clusters

Usage

```
showClusterHeatmap(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes = "all",
  cluster_column,
  cor = c("pearson", "spearman"),
  distance = "ward.D",
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "showClusterHeatmap",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
genes	vector of genes to use, default to 'all'
cluster_column	name of column to use for clusters
cor	correlation score to calculate distance
distance	distance method to use for hierarchical clustering
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
...	additional parameters for the Heatmap function from ComplexHeatmap

Details

Correlation heatmap of selected clusters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
showClusterHeatmap(gobject)
```

showCPGscores	<i>showCPGscores</i>
---------------	----------------------

Description

visualize Cell Proximity Gene enrichment scores

Usage

```
showCPGscores(  
  gobject,  
  CPGscore,  
  method = c("volcano", "cell_barplot", "cell-cell", "cell_sankey"),  
  min_cells = 5,  
  min_fdr = 0.05,  
  min_spat_diff = 0.2,  
  min_log2_fc = 0.5,  
  keep_int_duplicates = TRUE,  
  direction = c("both", "up", "down"),  
  cell_color_code = NULL,  
  show_plot = NA,  
  return_plot = NA,  
  save_plot = NA,  
  save_param = list(),  
  default_save_name = "showCPGscores"  
)
```

Arguments

CPGscore	CPGscore, output from getCellProximityGeneScores()
method	visualization method
min_cells	min number of cells threshold
min_fdr	fdr threshold
min_spat_diff	spatial difference threshold
min_log2_fc	min log2 fold-change
keep_int_duplicates	keep both cell_A-cell_B and cell_B-cell_A
direction	up or downregulation or both

cell_color_code	color code for cell types
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Give more details ...

Value

Gene to gene scores in data.table format

Examples

```
showCPGscores(CPGscore)
```

```
showGeneExpressionProximityScore
  showGeneExpressionProximityScore
```

Description

Create heatmap from cell-cell proximity scores

Usage

```
showGeneExpressionProximityScore(
  scores,
  selected_gene,
  sort_column = "diff_spat"
)
```

Arguments

scores	CPscore, output from getAverageCellProximityGeneScores()
selected_gene	gene to show
sort_column	column name to use for sorting

Details

Give more details ...

Value

ggplot barplot

Examples

```
showGeneExpressionProximityScore(scores)
```

showGiottoInstructions	<i>showGiottoInstructions</i>
------------------------	-------------------------------

Description

Function to display all instructions from giotto object

Usage

```
showGiottoInstructions(gobject)
```

Arguments

gobject giotto object

Value

named vector with giotto instructions

Examples

```
showGiottoInstructions()
```

showGTGscores	<i>showGTGscores</i>
---------------	----------------------

Description

visualize Cell Proximity Gene enrichment scores

Usage

```
showGTGscores(  
  GTGscore,  
  method = c("cell_barplot", "cell-cell", "cell_sankey"),  
  min_cells = 5,  
  min_pval = 0.05,  
  min_spat_diff = 0.2,  
  min_log2_fc = 0.5,  
  direction = c("both", "up", "down"),  
  cell_color_code = NULL,  
  show_plot = T,  
  specific_genes_1 = NULL,  
  specific_genes_2 = NULL,  
  first_cell_name = "ligand cell",  
  second_cell_name = "receptor cell",  
  return_DT = F  
)
```


Arguments

method	visualization method
min_cells	min number of cells threshold
min_pval	p-value threshold
min_spat_diff	spatial difference threshold
min_log2_fc	log2 fold-change threshold
direction	up or downregulation or both
cell_color_code	color code for cell types
show_plot	print plot
specific_genes_1	subset of genes, matched with specific_genes_2
specific_genes_2	subset of genes, matched with specific_genes_1
first_cell_name	name for first cells
second_cell_name	name for second cells
CPGscore	CPGscore, output from getCellProximityGeneScores()

Details

Give more details ...

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
showGTGscores(CPGscore)
```

```
showIntExpressionProximityScore
```

```
showIntExpressionProximityScore
```

Description

Create heatmap from cell-cell proximity scores

Usage

```
showIntExpressionProximityScore(
  scores,
  selected_interaction,
  sort_column = "diff_spat",
  show_enriched_n = 5,
  show_depleted_n = 5
)
```

Arguments

scores	scores, output from getAverageCellProximityGeneScores()
selected_interaction	interaction to show
sort_column	column name to use for sorting
show_enriched_n	show top enriched interactions
show_depleted_n	show top depleted interactions

Details

Give more details ...

Value

ggplot barplot

Examples

showIntExpressionProximityScore(scores)

showPattern	<i>showPattern</i>
-------------	--------------------

Description

create a spatial grid
show patterns for 2D spatial data

Usage

showPattern(gobject, spatPatObj, ...)

showPattern(gobject, spatPatObj, ...)

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
spatPatObj	Output from detectSpatialPatterns
dimension	dimension to plot
trim	Trim ends of the PC values.
background_color	background color for plot
grid_border_color	color for grid
show_legend	show legend of ggplot
show_plot	show plot

return_plot return ggplot object
save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name
 default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description.

Value

ggplot
ggplot

See Also

[showPattern2D](#)

Examples

```
showPattern(gobject)  
showPattern(gobject)
```

showPattern2D	<i>showPattern2D</i>
---------------	----------------------

Description

show patterns for 2D spatial data

Usage

```
showPattern2D(  
  gobject,  
  spatPatObj,  
  dimension = 1,  
  trim = c(0.02, 0.98),  
  background_color = "white",  
  grid_border_color = "grey",  
  show_legend = T,  
  point_size = 1,  
  show_plot = NA,  
  return_plot = NA,  
  save_plot = NA,  
  save_param = list(),  
  default_save_name = "showPattern2D"  
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>spatPatObj</code>	Output from <code>detectSpatialPatterns</code>
<code>dimension</code>	dimension to plot
<code>trim</code>	Trim ends of the PC values.
<code>background_color</code>	background color for plot
<code>grid_border_color</code>	color for grid
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend of ggplot
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <code>all_plots_save_function()</code>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

Value

ggplot

Examples

`showPattern2D(gobject)`

<code>showPattern3D</code>	<i>showPattern3D</i>
----------------------------	----------------------

Description

show patterns for 3D spatial data

Usage

```
showPattern3D(  
  gobject,  
  spatPatObj,  
  dimension = 1,  
  trim = c(0.02, 0.98),  
  background_color = "white",  
  grid_border_color = "grey",  
  show_legend = T,  
  point_size = 1,  
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),  
  custom_ratio = NULL,  
  x_ticks = NULL,  
  y_ticks = NULL,  
  z_ticks = NULL,
```

```

    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "showPattern3D"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>spatPatObj</code>	Output from <code>detectSpatialPatterns</code>
<code>dimension</code>	dimension to plot
<code>trim</code>	Trim ends of the PC values.
<code>background_color</code>	background color for plot
<code>grid_border_color</code>	color for grid
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend of plot
<code>point_size</code>	adjust the point size
<code>axis_scale</code>	scale the axis
<code>custom_ratio</code>	customize the scale of the axis
<code>x_ticks</code>	the tick number of <code>x_axis</code>
<code>y_ticks</code>	the tick number of <code>y_axis</code>
<code>z_ticks</code>	the tick number of <code>z_axis</code>
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return plot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <code>all_plots_save_function()</code>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

Value

plotly

Examples

```
showPattern3D(gobject)
```

showPatternGenes	<i>showPatternGenes</i>
------------------	-------------------------

Description

show genes correlated with spatial patterns

Usage

```
showPatternGenes(
  gobject,
  spatPatObj,
  dimension = 1,
  top_pos_genes = 5,
  top_neg_genes = 5,
  point_size = 1,
  return_DT = FALSE,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "showPatternGenes"
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
spatPatObj	Output from detectSpatialPatterns
dimension	dimension to plot genes for.
top_pos_genes	Top positively correlated genes.
top_neg_genes	Top negatively correlated genes.
point_size	size of points
return_DT	if TRUE, it will return the data.table used to generate the plots
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
showPatternGenes(gobject)
```

showProcessingSteps	<i>showProcessingSteps</i>
---------------------	----------------------------

Description

shows the sequential processing steps that were performed in a summarized format

Usage

```
showProcessingSteps(gobject)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
---------	---------------

Value

list of processing steps and names

Examples

```
showProcessingSteps(gobject)
```

showTopGeneToGene	<i>showTopGeneToGene</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

Show enriched/depleted gene-gene enrichments

Usage

```
showTopGeneToGene(
  GTGscore,
  top_interactions = 10,
  direction = c("increased", "decreased"),
  complement_data = T,
  subset_cell_ints = NULL,
  subset_genes = NULL
)
```

Arguments

GTGscore	GTGscore, output from getGeneToGeneScores()
top_interactions	number of top gene-gene enrichments to show
direction	show top increased or decreased gene-gene enrichments
complement_data	include non-enriched gene-gene scores from other cell-cell interactions
subset_cell_ints	subset cell-cell interactions to show
subset_genes	subset genes to show

Details

Give more details ...

Value

ggplot barplot

Examples

showTopGeneToGene(scores)

signPCA	<i>signPCA</i>
---------	----------------

Description

identify significant prinicipal components (PCs)

Usage

```
signPCA(  
  gobject,  
  method = c("screeplot", "jackstraw"),  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  reduction = c("cells", "genes"),  
  genes_to_use = NULL,  
  scale_unit = T,  
  ncp = 50,  
  scree_labels = T,  
  scree_ylim = c(0, 10),  
  jack_iter = 10,  
  jack_threshold = 0.01,  
  jack_verbose = T,  
  show_plot = NA,  
  return_plot = NA,  
  save_plot = NA,  
  save_param = list(),  
  default_save_name = "signPCA",  
  ...  
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
method	method to use to identify significant PCs
expression_values	expression values to use
reduction	cells or genes
genes_to_use	subset of genes to use for PCA
scale_unit	scale features before PCA

ncp	number of principal components to calculate
scree_labels	show labels on scree plot
scree_ylim	y-axis limits on scree plot
jack_iter	number of iterations for jackstraw
jack_threshold	p-value threshold to call a PC significant
jack_verbose	show progress of jackstraw method
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
...	additional parameters for PCA

Details

Two different methods can be used to assess the number of relevant or significant principal components (PC's).

1. Screeplot works by plotting the explained variance of each individual PC in a barplot allowing you to identify which PC does not show a significant contribution anymore (= 'elbow method').

2. The Jackstraw method uses the [permutationPA](#) function. By systematically permuting genes it identifies robust, and thus significant, PCs.

multiple PCA results can be stored by changing the *name* parameter

Value

ggplot object for scree method and maxtrix of p-values for jackstraw

Examples

```
signPCA(gobject)
```

spatCellPlot	<i>spatCellPlot</i>
--------------	---------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
spatCellPlot(
  gobject,
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  cell_annotation_values,
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
```

```

gradient_midpoint = NULL,
gradient_limits = NULL,
select_cell_groups = NULL,
select_cells = NULL,
point_size = 3,
point_border_col = "black",
point_border_stroke = 0.1,
show_cluster_center = F,
show_center_label = F,
center_point_size = 4,
center_point_border_col = "black",
center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
label_size = 4,
label_fontface = "bold",
show_network = F,
spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
network_color = NULL,
network_alpha = 1,
show_grid = F,
spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
grid_color = NULL,
show_other_cells = T,
other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
other_point_size = 1,
other_cells_alpha = 0.1,
coord_fix_ratio = NULL,
show_legend = T,
cow_n_col = 2,
cow_rel_h = 1,
cow_rel_w = 1,
cow_align = "h",
show_plot = NA,
return_plot = NA,
save_plot = NA,
save_param = list(),
default_save_name = "spatCellPlot"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>cell_annotation_values</code>	numeric cell annotation columns
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits

select_cell_groups	select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
point_size	size of point (cell)
point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
show_cluster_center	plot center of selected clusters
show_center_label	plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size	size of center points
label_size	size of labels
label_fontface	font of labels
show_network	show underlying spatial network
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
network_color	color of spatial network
network_alpha	alpha of spatial network
show_grid	show spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
grid_color	color of spatial grid
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
other_point_size	point size of not selected cells
other_cells_alpha	alpha of not selected cells
coord_fix_ratio	fix ratio between x and y-axis
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

spatCellPlot(gobject)

spatCellPlot2D	<i>spatCellPlot2D</i>
----------------	-----------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
spatCellPlot2D(  
  gobject,  
  sdimx = "sdimx",  
  sdimy = "sdimy",  
  spat_enr_names = NULL,  
  cell_annotation_values,  
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),  
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,  
  gradient_limits = NULL,  
  select_cell_groups = NULL,  
  select_cells = NULL,  
  point_size = 3,  
  point_border_col = "black",  
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,  
  show_cluster_center = F,  
  show_center_label = F,  
  center_point_size = 4,  
  center_point_border_col = "black",  
  center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,  
  label_size = 4,  
  label_fontface = "bold",  
  show_network = F,  
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",  
  network_color = NULL,  
  network_alpha = 1,  
  show_grid = F,  
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",  
  grid_color = NULL,  
  show_other_cells = T,  
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",  
  other_point_size = 1,  
  other_cells_alpha = 0.1,  
  coord_fix_ratio = NULL,  
  show_legend = T,  
  cow_n_col = 2,
```

```

cow_rel_h = 1,
cow_rel_w = 1,
cow_align = "h",
show_plot = NA,
return_plot = NA,
save_plot = NA,
save_param = list(),
default_save_name = "spatCellPlot2D"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>cell_annotation_values</code>	numeric cell annotation columns
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>point_border_col</code>	color of border around points
<code>point_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of border around points
<code>show_cluster_center</code>	plot center of selected clusters
<code>show_center_label</code>	plot label of selected clusters
<code>center_point_size</code>	size of center points
<code>label_size</code>	size of labels
<code>label_fontface</code>	font of labels
<code>show_network</code>	show underlying spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial network
<code>network_alpha</code>	alpha of spatial network
<code>show_grid</code>	show spatial grid
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use

grid_color	color of spatial grid
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
other_point_size	point size of not selected cells
other_cells_alpha	alpha of not selected cells
coord_fix_ratio	fix ratio between x and y-axis
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
spatCellPlot2D(gobject)
```

spatDimCellPlot	<i>spatDimCellPlot</i>
-----------------	------------------------

Description

Visualize numerical features of cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in 2D

Usage

```
spatDimCellPlot(  
  gobject,  
  plot_alignment = c("vertical", "horizontal"),  
  spat_enr_names = NULL,  
  cell_annotation_values,  
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",  
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",  
  dim1_to_use = 1,  

```

```
dim2_to_use = 2,
sdmx = "sdmx",
sdimy = "sdimy",
cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
gradient_midpoint = NULL,
gradient_limits = NULL,
select_cell_groups = NULL,
select_cells = NULL,
dim_point_size = 1,
dim_point_border_col = "black",
dim_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
spat_point_size = 1,
spat_point_border_col = "black",
spat_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
dim_show_cluster_center = F,
dim_show_center_label = T,
dim_center_point_size = 4,
dim_center_point_border_col = "black",
dim_center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
dim_label_size = 4,
dim_label_fontface = "bold",
spat_show_cluster_center = F,
spat_show_center_label = F,
spat_center_point_size = 4,
spat_center_point_border_col = "black",
spat_center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
spat_label_size = 4,
spat_label_fontface = "bold",
show_NN_network = F,
nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
nn_network_name = "sNN.pca",
dim_edge_alpha = 0.5,
spat_show_network = F,
spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
spat_network_color = "red",
spat_network_alpha = 0.5,
spat_show_grid = F,
spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
spat_grid_color = "green",
show_other_cells = TRUE,
other_cell_color = "grey",
dim_other_point_size = 0.5,
spat_other_point_size = 0.5,
spat_other_cells_alpha = 0.5,
coord_fix_ratio = NULL,
cow_n_col = 2,
cow_rel_h = 1,
cow_rel_w = 1,
cow_align = "h",
show_legend = T,
show_plot = NA,
return_plot = NA,
```

```

    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "spatDimCellPlot"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>plot_alignment</code>	direction to align plot
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>cell_annotation_values</code>	numeric cell annotation columns
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>sdimx</code>	= spatial dimension to use on x-axis
<code>sdimy</code>	= spatial dimension to use on y-axis
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>dim_point_size</code>	size of points in dim. reduction space
<code>dim_point_border_col</code>	border color of points in dim. reduction space
<code>dim_point_border_stroke</code>	border stroke of points in dim. reduction space
<code>spat_point_size</code>	size of spatial points
<code>spat_point_border_col</code>	border color of spatial points
<code>spat_point_border_stroke</code>	border stroke of spatial points
<code>dim_show_cluster_center</code>	show the center of each cluster
<code>dim_show_center_label</code>	provide a label for each cluster
<code>dim_center_point_size</code>	size of the center point
<code>dim_center_point_border_col</code>	border color of center point


```

dim_center_point_border_stroke
    stroke size of center point
dim_label_size  size of the center label
dim_label_fontface
    font of the center label
spat_show_cluster_center
    show the center of each cluster
spat_show_center_label
    provide a label for each cluster
spat_center_point_size
    size of the center point
spat_label_size
    size of the center label
spat_label_fontface
    font of the center label
show_NN_network
    show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use
    type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
nn_network_name
    name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
dim_edge_alpha  column to use for alpha of the edges
spat_show_network
    show spatial network
spatial_network_name
    name of spatial network to use
spat_network_color
    color of spatial network
spat_show_grid  show spatial grid
spatial_grid_name
    name of spatial grid to use
spat_grid_color
    color of spatial grid
show_other_cells
    display not selected cells
other_cell_color
    color of not selected cells
dim_other_point_size
    size of not selected dim cells
spat_other_point_size
    size of not selected spat cells
spat_other_cells_alpha
    alpha of not selected spat cells
coord_fix_ratio
    ratio for coordinates
cow_n_col      cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h      cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w      cowplot param: relative width

```

cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
spatDimCellPlot(gobject)
```

spatDimCellPlot2D	<i>spatDimCellPlot2D</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

Visualize numerical features of cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in 2D

Usage

```
spatDimCellPlot2D(  
  gobject,  
  plot_alignment = c("vertical", "horizontal"),  
  spat_enr_names = NULL,  
  cell_annotation_values,  
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",  
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",  
  dim1_to_use = 1,  
  dim2_to_use = 2,  
  sdimx = "sdimx",  
  sdimy = "sdimy",  
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),  
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,  
  gradient_limits = NULL,  
  select_cell_groups = NULL,  
  select_cells = NULL,  
  dim_point_size = 1,  
  dim_point_border_col = "black",  
  dim_point_border_stroke = 0.1,  
)
```

```

    spat_point_size = 1,
    spat_point_border_col = "black",
    spat_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
    dim_show_cluster_center = F,
    dim_show_center_label = T,
    dim_center_point_size = 4,
    dim_center_point_border_col = "black",
    dim_center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
    dim_label_size = 4,
    dim_label_fontface = "bold",
    spat_show_cluster_center = F,
    spat_show_center_label = F,
    spat_center_point_size = 4,
    spat_center_point_border_col = "black",
    spat_center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
    spat_label_size = 4,
    spat_label_fontface = "bold",
    show_NN_network = F,
    nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
    nn_network_name = "sNN.pca",
    dim_edge_alpha = 0.5,
    spat_show_network = F,
    spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
    spat_network_color = "red",
    spat_network_alpha = 0.5,
    spat_show_grid = F,
    spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
    spat_grid_color = "green",
    show_other_cells = TRUE,
    other_cell_color = "grey",
    dim_other_point_size = 0.5,
    spat_other_point_size = 0.5,
    spat_other_cells_alpha = 0.5,
    coord_fix_ratio = NULL,
    cow_n_col = 2,
    cow_rel_h = 1,
    cow_rel_w = 1,
    cow_align = "h",
    show_legend = T,
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "spatDimCellPlot2D"
  )

```

Arguments

gobject giotto object
 plot_alignment direction to align plot
 spat_enr_names names of spatial enrichment results to include

```

cell_annotation_values      numeric cell annotation columns
dim_reduction_to_use        dimension reduction to use
dim_reduction_name          dimension reduction name
dim1_to_use                 dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use                 dimension to use on y-axis
sdimx                       = spatial dimension to use on x-axis
sdimy                       = spatial dimension to use on y-axis
cell_color_gradient         vector with 3 colors for numeric data
gradient_midpoint           midpoint for color gradient
gradient_limits             vector with lower and upper limits
select_cell_groups          select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells               select subset of cells based on cell IDs
dim_point_size              size of points in dim. reduction space
dim_point_border_col        border color of points in dim. reduction space
dim_point_border_stroke     border stroke of points in dim. reduction space
spat_point_size             size of spatial points
spat_point_border_col       border color of spatial points
spat_point_border_stroke    border stroke of spatial points
dim_show_cluster_center     show the center of each cluster
dim_show_center_label       provide a label for each cluster
dim_center_point_size       size of the center point
dim_center_point_border_col border color of center point
dim_center_point_border_stroke stroke size of center point
dim_label_size              size of the center label
dim_label_fontface          font of the center label
spat_show_cluster_center    show the center of each cluster
spat_show_center_label      provide a label for each cluster

```

spat_center_point_size	size of the center point
spat_label_size	size of the center label
spat_label_fontface	font of the center label
show_NN_network	show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
nn_network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
dim_edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
spat_show_network	show spatial network
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
spat_network_color	color of spatial network
spat_show_grid	show spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
spat_grid_color	color of spatial grid
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
dim_other_point_size	size of not selected dim cells
spat_other_point_size	size of not selected spat cells
spat_other_cells_alpha	alpha of not selected spat cells
coord_fix_ratio	ratio for coordinates
cow_n_col	cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
spatDimCellPlot2D(gobject)
```

spatDimGenePlot

spatDimGenePlot

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in ggplot mode

Usage

```
spatDimGenePlot(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  plot_alignment = c("vertical", "horizontal"),
  genes,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  point_size = 1,
  dim_point_border_col = "black",
  dim_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_NN_network = F,
  show_spatial_network = F,
  show_spatial_grid = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  edge_alpha_dim = NULL,
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  spat_point_size = 1,
  spat_point_border_col = "black",
  spat_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  midpoint = 0,
  genes_high_color = "red",
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  cow_n_col = 2,
  cow_rel_h = 1,
  cow_rel_w = 1,
```

```

cow_align = "h",
show_legend = T,
show_plot = NA,
return_plot = NA,
save_plot = NA,
save_param = list(),
default_save_name = "spatDimGenePlot"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>plot_alignment</code>	direction to align plot
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>dim_point_border_col</code>	color of border around points
<code>dim_point_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of border around points
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>edge_alpha_dim</code>	dim reduction plot: column to use for alpha of the edges
<code>scale_alpha_with_expression</code>	scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use
<code>spat_point_size</code>	spatial plot: point size
<code>spat_point_border_col</code>	color of border around points
<code>spat_point_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of border around points
<code>midpoint</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>cow_n_col</code>	cowplot param: how many columns

cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
dim_point_size	dim reduction plot: point size

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatDimGenePlot3D](#)

Examples

spatDimGenePlot(gobject)

spatDimGenePlot2D	<i>spatDimGenePlot2D</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in ggplot mode

Usage

```
spatDimGenePlot2D(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  plot_alignment = c("vertical", "horizontal"),  
  genes,  
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",  
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",  
  dim1_to_use = 1,  
  dim2_to_use = 2,  
  point_size = 1,  
  dim_point_border_col = "black",  
  dim_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
```



```

show_NN_network = F,
show_spatial_network = F,
show_spatial_grid = F,
nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
network_name = "sNN.pca",
edge_alpha_dim = NULL,
scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
spat_point_size = 1,
spat_point_border_col = "black",
spat_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
midpoint = 0,
genes_high_color = "red",
genes_mid_color = "white",
genes_low_color = "blue",
cow_n_col = 2,
cow_rel_h = 1,
cow_rel_w = 1,
cow_align = "h",
show_legend = T,
show_plot = NA,
return_plot = NA,
save_plot = NA,
save_param = list(),
default_save_name = "spatDimGenePlot2D"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>plot_alignment</code>	direction to align plot
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>dim_point_border_col</code>	color of border around points
<code>dim_point_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of border around points
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)

network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
edge_alpha_dim	dim reduction plot: column to use for alpha of the edges
scale_alpha_with_expression	scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
spat_point_size	spatial plot: point size
spat_point_border_col	color of border around points
spat_point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
midpoint	size of point (cell)
cow_n_col	cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
dim_point_size	dim reduction plot: point size

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatDimGenePlot3D](#)

Examples

```
spatDimGenePlot2D(gobject)
```

spatDimGenePlot3D	<i>spatDimGenePlot3D</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in ggplot mode

Usage

```
spatDimGenePlot3D(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  plot_alignment = c("horizontal", "vertical"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = NULL,
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  sdimz = "sdimz",
  genes,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 1.5,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  label_size = 16,
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_high_color = "red",
  dim_point_size = 3,
  nn_network_alpha = 0.5,
  show_spatial_network = F,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  network_color = "lightgray",
  spatial_network_alpha = 0.5,
  show_spatial_grid = F,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  spatial_grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_alpha = 0.5,
  spatial_point_size = 3,
  legend_text_size = 12,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
```

```

    z_ticks = NULL,
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "spatDimGenePlot3D"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>plot_alignment</code>	direction to align plot
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>dim3_to_use</code>	dimension to use on z-axis
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>dim_point_size</code>	dim reduction plot: point size
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use
<code>spatial_point_size</code>	spatial plot: point size
<code>show_plot</code>	show plots
<code>return_plot</code>	return plotly object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <code>all_plots_save_function()</code>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>
<code>edge_alpha_dim</code>	dim reduction plot: column to use for alpha of the edges
<code>scale_alpha_with_expression</code>	scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
spatDimGenePlot3D(gobject)
```

spatDimPlot	<i>spatDimPlot</i>
-------------	--------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates 2D

Usage

```
spatDimPlot(
  gobject,
  plot_alignment = c("vertical", "horizontal"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  dim_point_size = 1,
  dim_point_border_col = "black",
  dim_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  spat_point_size = 1,
  spat_point_border_col = "black",
  spat_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  dim_show_cluster_center = F,
  dim_show_center_label = T,
  dim_center_point_size = 4,
  dim_center_point_border_col = "black",
  dim_center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  dim_label_size = 4,
  dim_label_fontface = "bold",
```

```

    spat_show_cluster_center = F,
    spat_show_center_label = F,
    spat_center_point_size = 4,
    spat_label_size = 4,
    spat_label_fontface = "bold",
    show_NN_network = F,
    nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
    network_name = "sNN.pca",
    nn_network_alpha = 0.05,
    show_spatial_network = F,
    spat_network_name = "spatial_network",
    spat_network_color = "blue",
    spat_network_alpha = 0.5,
    show_spatial_grid = F,
    spat_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
    spat_grid_color = "blue",
    show_other_cells = T,
    other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
    dim_other_point_size = 1,
    spat_other_point_size = 1,
    spat_other_cells_alpha = 0.5,
    dim_show_legend = F,
    spat_show_legend = F,
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "spatDimPlot"
  )

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>plot_alignment</code>	direction to align plot
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>sdimx</code>	= spatial dimension to use on x-axis
<code>sdimy</code>	= spatial dimension to use on y-axis
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data

```

gradient_midpoint      midpoint for color gradient
gradient_limits        vector with lower and upper limits
select_cell_groups     select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells           select subset of cells based on cell IDs
dim_point_size         size of points in dim. reduction space
dim_point_border_col   border color of points in dim. reduction space
dim_point_border_stroke border stroke of points in dim. reduction space
spat_point_size        size of spatial points
spat_point_border_col  border color of spatial points
spat_point_border_stroke border stroke of spatial points
dim_show_cluster_center show the center of each cluster
dim_show_center_label  provide a label for each cluster
dim_center_point_size  size of the center point
dim_center_point_border_col border color of center point
dim_center_point_border_stroke stroke size of center point
dim_label_size         size of the center label
dim_label_fontface     font of the center label
spat_show_cluster_center show the center of each cluster
spat_show_center_label provide a label for each cluster
spat_center_point_size size of the center point
spat_label_size        size of the center label
spat_label_fontface    font of the center label
show_NN_network        show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use      type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name           name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
nn_network_alpha       column to use for alpha of the edges

```

show_spatial_network	show spatial network
spat_network_name	name of spatial network to use
spat_network_color	color of spatial network
show_spatial_grid	show spatial grid
spat_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
spat_grid_color	color of spatial grid
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
dim_other_point_size	size of not selected dim cells
spat_other_point_size	size of not selected spat cells
spat_other_cells_alpha	alpha of not selected spat cells
dim_show_legend	show legend of dimension reduction plot
spat_show_legend	show legend of spatial plot
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatDimPlot2D](#) and [spatDimPlot3D](#) for 3D visualization.

Examples

```
spatDimPlot(gobject)
```

spatDimPlot2D

spatDimPlot2D

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates 2D

Usage

```
spatDimPlot2D(
  gobject,
  plot_alignment = c("vertical", "horizontal"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  dim_point_size = 1,
  dim_point_border_col = "black",
  dim_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  spat_point_size = 1,
  spat_point_border_col = "black",
  spat_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  dim_show_cluster_center = F,
  dim_show_center_label = T,
  dim_center_point_size = 4,
  dim_center_point_border_col = "black",
  dim_center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  dim_label_size = 4,
  dim_label_fontface = "bold",
  spat_show_cluster_center = F,
  spat_show_center_label = F,
  spat_center_point_size = 4,
  spat_label_size = 4,
  spat_label_fontface = "bold",
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  nn_network_alpha = 0.05,
  show_spatial_network = F,
  spat_network_name = "spatial_network",
```

```

    spat_network_color = "blue",
    spat_network_alpha = 0.5,
    show_spatial_grid = F,
    spat_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
    spat_grid_color = "blue",
    show_other_cells = T,
    other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
    dim_other_point_size = 1,
    spat_other_point_size = 1,
    spat_other_cells_alpha = 0.5,
    dim_show_legend = F,
    spat_show_legend = F,
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "spatDimPlot2D"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>plot_alignment</code>	direction to align plot
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>sdimx</code>	= spatial dimension to use on x-axis
<code>sdimy</code>	= spatial dimension to use on y-axis
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>dim_point_size</code>	size of points in dim. reduction space
<code>dim_point_border_col</code>	border color of points in dim. reduction space

```

dim_point_border_stroke
    border stroke of points in dim. reduction space
spat_point_size
    size of spatial points
spat_point_border_col
    border color of spatial points
spat_point_border_stroke
    border stroke of spatial points
dim_show_cluster_center
    show the center of each cluster
dim_show_center_label
    provide a label for each cluster
dim_center_point_size
    size of the center point
dim_center_point_border_col
    border color of center point
dim_center_point_border_stroke
    stroke size of center point
dim_label_size
    size of the center label
dim_label_fontface
    font of the center label
spat_show_cluster_center
    show the center of each cluster
spat_show_center_label
    provide a label for each cluster
spat_center_point_size
    size of the center point
spat_label_size
    size of the center label
spat_label_fontface
    font of the center label
show_NN_network
    show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use
    type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name
    name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
nn_network_alpha
    column to use for alpha of the edges
show_spatial_network
    show spatial network
spat_network_name
    name of spatial network to use
spat_network_color
    color of spatial network
show_spatial_grid
    show spatial grid
spat_grid_name
    name of spatial grid to use
spat_grid_color
    color of spatial grid

```

show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
dim_other_point_size	size of not selected dim cells
spat_other_point_size	size of not selected spat cells
spat_other_cells_alpha	alpha of not selected spat cells
dim_show_legend	show legend of dimension reduction plot
spat_show_legend	show legend of spatial plot
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatDimPlot3D](#)

Examples

spatDimPlot2D(gobject)

spatDimPlot3D	<i>spatDimPlot3D</i>
---------------	----------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in plotly mode

Usage

```

spatDimPlot3D(
  gobject,
  plot_alignment = c("horizontal", "vertical"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = 3,
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  sdimz = "sdimz",
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
  center_point_size = 4,
  label_size = 16,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 1.5,
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  dim_point_size = 3,
  nn_network_alpha = 0.5,
  show_spatial_network = F,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  network_color = "lightgray",
  spatial_network_alpha = 0.5,
  show_spatial_grid = F,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  spatial_grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_alpha = 0.5,
  spatial_point_size = 3,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  z_ticks = NULL,
  legend_text_size = 12,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "spatDimPlot3D"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>plot_alignment</code>	direction to align plot
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>dim3_to_use</code>	dimension to use on z-axis
<code>sdimx</code>	= spatial dimension to use on x-axis
<code>sdimy</code>	= spatial dimension to use on y-axis
<code>sdimz</code>	= spatial dimension to use on z-axis
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>show_cluster_center</code>	show the center of each cluster
<code>show_center_label</code>	provide a label for each cluster
<code>center_point_size</code>	size of the center point
<code>label_size</code>	size of the center label
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells
<code>other_cell_color</code>	color of not selected cells
<code>other_point_size</code>	size of not selected cells
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>dim_point_size</code>	size of points in dim. reduction space
<code>nn_network_alpha</code>	column to use for alpha of the edges
<code>show_spatial_network</code>	show spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use

spatial_network_alpha	alpha of spatial network
show_spatial_grid	show spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
spatial_grid_color	color of spatial grid
spatial_point_size	size of spatial points
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
dim_point_border_col	border color of points in dim. reduction space
dim_point_border_stroke	border stroke of points in dim. reduction space
spatial_network_color	color of spatial network
spatial_other_point_size	size of not selected spatial points
spatial_other_cells_alpha	alpha of not selected spatial points
dim_other_point_size	size of not selected dim. reduction points
show_legend	show legend

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
spatDimPlot3D(gobject)
```

spatGenePlot

spatGenePlot

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
spatGenePlot(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes,
  genes_high_color = "darkred",
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "darkblue",
  show_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  midpoint = 0,
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
  point_size = 1,
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_legend = T,
  cow_n_col = 2,
  cow_rel_h = 1,
  cow_rel_w = 1,
  cow_align = "h",
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "spatGenePlot"
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>genes_high_color</code>	color represents high gene expression
<code>genes_mid_color</code>	color represents middle gene expression

genes_low_color	color represents low gene expression
show_network	show underlying spatial network
network_color	color of spatial network
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
show_grid	show spatial grid
grid_color	color of spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
midpoint	expression midpoint
scale_alpha_with_expression	scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
point_size	size of point (cell)
point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
show_legend	show legend
cow_n_col	cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
...	parameters for cowplot::save_plot()

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatGenePlot3D](#) and [spatGenePlot2D](#)

Examples

```
spatGenePlot(gobject)
```

spatGenePlot2D

spatGenePlot2D

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
spatGenePlot2D(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes,
  genes_high_color = "darkred",
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "darkblue",
  show_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  midpoint = 0,
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
  point_size = 1,
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_legend = T,
  cow_n_col = 2,
  cow_rel_h = 1,
  cow_rel_w = 1,
  cow_align = "h",
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "spatGenePlot2D"
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>genes_high_color</code>	color represents high gene expression
<code>genes_mid_color</code>	color represents middle gene expression

genes_low_color	color represents low gene expression
show_network	show underlying spatial network
network_color	color of spatial network
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
show_grid	show spatial grid
grid_color	color of spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
midpoint	expression midpoint
scale_alpha_with_expression	scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
point_size	size of point (cell)
point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
show_legend	show legend
cow_n_col	cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
...	parameters for cowplot::save_plot()

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatGenePlot3D](#)

Examples

```
spatGenePlot2D(gobject)
```

spatGenePlot3D

spatGenePlot3D

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
spatGenePlot3D(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes,
  show_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  show_grid = F,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 1,
  genes_high_color = NULL,
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  point_size = 2,
  show_legend = T,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  z_ticks = NULL,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "spatGenePlot3D"
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>show_network</code>	show underlying spatial network
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial network

spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
show_grid	show spatial grid
genes_high_color	color represents high gene expression
genes_mid_color	color represents middle gene expression
genes_low_color	color represents low gene expression
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
point_size	size of point (cell)
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
grid_color	color of spatial grid
midpoint	expression midpoint
scale_alpha_with_expression	scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
...	parameters for cowplot::save_plot()

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
spatGenePlot3D(gobject)
```

Spatial_AEH

Spatial_AEH

Description

calculate automatic expression histology with spatialDE method

Usage

```
Spatial_AEH(  
  gobject = NULL,  
  results = NULL,  
  pattern_num = 5,  
  l = 1.05,  
  show_AEH = T,  
  sdimx = NULL,  
  sdimy = NULL,  
  point_size = 3,  
  point_alpha = 1,  
  low_color = "blue",  
  mid_color = "white",  
  high_color = "red",  
  midpoint = 0,  
  python_path = NULL  
)
```

Arguments

gobject	Giotto object
results	output from spatial_DE
pattern_num	the number of gene expression patterns
show_AEH	show AEH plot
python_path	specify specific path to python if required

Details

Description.

Value

a list or a dataframe of SVs

Examples

```
Spatial_DE(gobject)
```

Spatial_DE	<i>Spatial_DE</i>
------------	-------------------

Description

calculate spatial variable genes with spatialDE method

Usage

```
Spatial_DE(
  gobject = NULL,
  show_plot = T,
  size = c(4, 2, 1),
  color = c("blue", "green", "red"),
  sig_alpha = 0.5,
  unsig_alpha = 0.5,
  python_path = NULL
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	Giotto object
<code>show_plot</code>	show FSV plot
<code>python_path</code>	specify specific path to python if required

Details

Description.

Value

a list or a dataframe of SVs

Examples

```
Spatial_DE(gobject)
```

spatPlot

spatPlot

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
spatPlot(
  gobject,
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
```

```

point_size = 3,
point_border_col = "black",
point_border_stroke = 0.1,
show_cluster_center = F,
show_center_label = F,
center_point_size = 4,
center_point_border_col = "black",
center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
label_size = 4,
label_fontface = "bold",
show_network = F,
spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
network_color = NULL,
network_alpha = 1,
show_grid = F,
spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
grid_color = NULL,
show_other_cells = T,
other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
other_point_size = 1,
other_cells_alpha = 0.1,
coord_fix_ratio = NULL,
title = NULL,
show_legend = T,
show_plot = NA,
return_plot = NA,
save_plot = NA,
save_param = list(),
default_save_name = "spatPlot"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs

point_size	size of point (cell)
point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
show_cluster_center	plot center of selected clusters
show_center_label	plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size	size of center points
label_size	size of labels
label_fontface	font of labels
show_network	show underlying spatial network
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
network_color	color of spatial network
network_alpha	alpha of spatial network
show_grid	show spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
grid_color	color of spatial grid
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
other_point_size	point size of not selected cells
other_cells_alpha	alpha of not selected cells
coord_fix_ratio	fix ratio between x and y-axis
title	title of plot
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatPlot3D](#)

Examples

```
spatPlot(gobject)
```

spatPlot2D	<i>spatPlot2D</i>
------------	-------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
spatPlot2D(  
  gobject,  
  sdimx = "sdimx",  
  sdimy = "sdimy",  
  spat_enr_names = NULL,  
  cell_color = NULL,  
  color_as_factor = T,  
  cell_color_code = NULL,  
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),  
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,  
  gradient_limits = NULL,  
  select_cell_groups = NULL,  
  select_cells = NULL,  
  point_size = 3,  
  point_border_col = "black",  
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,  
  show_cluster_center = F,  
  show_center_label = F,  
  center_point_size = 4,  
  center_point_border_col = "black",  
  center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,  
  label_size = 4,  
  label_fontface = "bold",  
  show_network = F,  
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",  
  network_color = NULL,  
  network_alpha = 1,  
  show_grid = F,  
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",  
  grid_color = NULL,  
  show_other_cells = T,  
)
```

```

    other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
    other_point_size = 1,
    other_cells_alpha = 0.1,
    coord_fix_ratio = NULL,
    title = NULL,
    show_legend = T,
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "spatPlot2D"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>point_border_col</code>	color of border around points
<code>point_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of border around points
<code>show_cluster_center</code>	plot center of selected clusters
<code>show_center_label</code>	plot label of selected clusters
<code>center_point_size</code>	size of center points
<code>label_size</code>	size of labels
<code>label_fontface</code>	font of labels
<code>show_network</code>	show underlying spatial network

spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
network_color	color of spatial network
network_alpha	alpha of spatial network
show_grid	show spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
grid_color	color of spatial grid
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
other_point_size	point size of not selected cells
other_cells_alpha	alpha of not selected cells
coord_fix_ratio	fix ratio between x and y-axis
title	title of plot
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatPlot3D](#)

Examples

```
spatPlot2D(gobject)
```

spatPlot3D

*spatPlot3D***Description**

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
spatPlot3D(
  gobject,
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  sdimz = "sdimz",
  point_size = 3,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 0.5,
  show_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  network_alpha = 1,
  other_cell_alpha = 0.5,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  title = "",
  show_legend = T,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  z_ticks = NULL,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "spat3D"
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>sdimz</code>	z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')

<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells
<code>other_cell_color</code>	color of not selected cells
<code>show_network</code>	show underlying spatial network
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>show_grid</code>	show spatial grid
<code>grid_color</code>	color of spatial grid
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use
<code>title</code>	title of plot
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend
<code>axis_scale</code>	the way to scale the axis
<code>custom_ratio</code>	customize the scale of the plot
<code>x_ticks</code>	set the number of ticks on the x-axis
<code>y_ticks</code>	set the number of ticks on the y-axis
<code>z_ticks</code>	set the number of ticks on the z-axis
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <code>all_plots_save_function()</code>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
spatPlot3D(gobject)
```

```
specificCellCellcommunicationScores
      specificCellCellcommunicationScores
```

Description

Specific Cell-Cell communication scores based on spatial expression of interacting cells

Usage

```
specificCellCellcommunicationScores(
  gobject,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  cluster_column = "cell_types",
  random_iter = 100,
  cell_type_1 = "astrocyte",
  cell_type_2 = "endothelial",
  gene_set_1,
  gene_set_2,
  log2FC_addendum = 0.1,
  min_observations = 2,
  verbose = T
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object to use
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	spatial network to use for identifying interacting cells
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column with cell type information
<code>random_iter</code>	number of iterations
<code>cell_type_1</code>	first cell type
<code>cell_type_2</code>	second cell type
<code>gene_set_1</code>	first specific gene set from gene pairs
<code>gene_set_2</code>	second specific gene set from gene pairs
<code>log2FC_addendum</code>	addendum to add when calculating log2FC
<code>min_observations</code>	minimum number of interactions needed to be considered
<code>verbose</code>	verbose

Details

Details will follow.

Value

Cell-Cell communication scores for gene pairs based on spatial interaction

Examples

```
specificCellCellcommunicationScores(gobject)
```

```
split_dendrogram_in_two
```

```
split_dendrogram_in_two
```

Description

Merge selected clusters based on pairwise correlation scores and size of cluster.

Usage

```
split_dendrogram_in_two(dend)
```

Arguments

dend dendrogram object

Value

list of two dendrograms and height of node

Examples

```
split_dendrogram_in_two(dend)
```

```
stitchFieldCoordinates
```

```
stitchFieldCoordinates
```

Description

Helper function to stitch field coordinates together to form one complete picture

Usage

```
stitchFieldCoordinates(
  location_file,
  offset_file,
  cumulate_offset_x = F,
  cumulate_offset_y = F,
  field_col = "Field of View",
  X_coord_col = "X",
  Y_coord_col = "Y",
  reverse_final_x = F,
  reverse_final_y = T
)
```


Arguments

location_file location dataframe with X and Y coordinates
 offset_file dataframe that describes the offset for each field (see details)
 cumulate_offset_x
 (boolean) Do the x-axis offset values need to be cumulated?
 cumulate_offset_y
 (boolean) Do the y-axis offset values need to be cumulated?
 field_col column that indicates the field within the location_file
 X_coord_col column that indicates the x coordinates
 Y_coord_col column that indicates the x coordinates
 reverse_final_x
 (boolean) Do the final x coordinates need to be reversed?
 reverse_final_y
 (boolean) Do the final y coordinates need to be reversed?

Details

Stitching of fields:

- 1. have cell locations: at least 3 columns: field, X, Y
- 2. create offset file: offset file has 3 columns: field, x_offset, y_offset
- 3. create new cell location file by stitching original cell locations with stitchFieldCoordinates
- 4. provide new cell location file to [createGiottoObject](#)

Value

Updated location dataframe with new X ['X_final'] and Y ['Y_final'] coordinates

Examples

```
stitchFieldCoordinates(gobject)
```

subClusterCells	<i>subClusterCells</i>
-----------------	------------------------

Description

subcluster cells

Usage

```

subClusterCells(
  gobject,
  name = "sub_clus",
  cluster_method = c("leiden", "louvain_community", "louvain_multinet"),
  cluster_column = NULL,
  selected_clusters = NULL,
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_variance = 1, expression_values
    = "normalized"),

```

```

    hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,
    hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,
    use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,
    min_nr_of_hvg = 5,
    pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),
    nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),
    k_neighbors = 10,
    resolution = 1,
    gamma = 1,
    omega = 1,
    python_path = NULL,
    nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
    network_name = "sNN.pca",
    return_gobject = TRUE,
    verbose = T,
    ...
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name for new clustering result
<code>cluster_method</code>	clustering method to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column to subcluster
<code>selected_clusters</code>	only do subclustering on these clusters
<code>hvg_param</code>	parameters for calculateHVG
<code>hvg_min_perc_cells</code>	threshold for detection in min percentage of cells
<code>hvg_mean_expr_det</code>	threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection
<code>use_all_genes_as_hvg</code>	forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA
<code>min_nr_of_hvg</code>	minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA
<code>pca_param</code>	parameters for runPCA
<code>nn_param</code>	parameters for parameters for createNearestNetwork
<code>k_neighbors</code>	number of k for createNearestNetwork
<code>resolution</code>	resolution
<code>gamma</code>	gamma
<code>omega</code>	omega
<code>python_path</code>	specify specific path to python if required
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
<code>verbose</code>	verbose
<code>...</code>	additional parameters

Details

Description of Louvain clustering method.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
subClusterCells(gobject)
```

subsetGiotto	<i>subsetGiotto</i>
--------------	---------------------

Description

subsets Giotto object including previous analyses.

Usage

```
subsetGiotto(gobject, cell_ids = NULL, gene_ids = NULL)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
cell_ids	cell IDs to keep
gene_ids	gene IDs to keep

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
subsetGiotto(gobject)
```

subsetGiottoLocs	<i>subsetGiottoLocs</i>
------------------	-------------------------

Description

subsets Giotto object based on spatial locations

Usage

```
subsetGiottoLocs(  
  gobject,  
  x_max = NULL,  
  x_min = NULL,  
  y_max = NULL,  
  y_min = NULL,  
  z_max = NULL,  
  z_min = NULL,  
  return_gobject = T  
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
x_max	maximum x-coordinate
x_min	minimum x-coordinate
y_max	maximum y-coordinate
y_min	minimum y-coordinate
z_max	maximum z-coordinate
z_min	minimum z-coordinate
return_gobject	return Giotto object

Details

if return_gobject = FALSE, then a filtered combined metadata data.table will be returned

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
subsetGiottoLocs(gobject)
```

viewHMRResults	<i>viewHMRResults</i>
----------------	-----------------------

Description

View results from doHMRF.

Usage

```
viewHMRResults(  
  gobject,  
  HMRFoutput,  
  k = NULL,  
  betas_to_view = NULL,  
  third_dim = NULL,  
  ...  
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
HMRFOutput	HMRF output from doHMRF
k	number of HMRF domains
betas_to_view	results from different betas that you want to view
...	paramters to visPlot()

Details

Description ...

Value

spatial plots with HMRF domains

See Also

[visPlot](#)

Examples

```
viewHMRFresults(gobject)
```

viewHMRFresults2D	<i>viewHMRFresults2D</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

View results from doHMRF.

Usage

```
viewHMRFresults2D(  
  gobject,  
  HMRFOutput,  
  k = NULL,  
  betas_to_view = NULL,  
  third_dim = NULL,  
  ...  
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
HMRFOutput	HMRF output from doHMRF
k	number of HMRF domains
betas_to_view	results from different betas that you want to view
...	paramters to visPlot()

Details

Description ...

Value

spatial plots with HMRF domains

See Also

[spatPlot2D](#)

Examples

`viewHMRResults2D(gobject)`

<code>viewHMRResults3D</code>	<i><code>viewHMRResults3D</code></i>
-------------------------------	--------------------------------------

Description

View results from doHMRF.

Usage

```
viewHMRResults3D(  
  gobject,  
  HMRFoutput,  
  k = NULL,  
  betas_to_view = NULL,  
  third_dim = NULL,  
  ...  
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>HMRFoutput</code>	HMRF output from doHMRF
<code>k</code>	number of HMRF domains
<code>betas_to_view</code>	results from different betas that you want to view
<code>...</code>	paramters to <code>visPlot()</code>

Details

Description ...

Value

spatial plots with HMRF domains

See Also

[spatPlot3D](#)

Examples

```
viewHMRFresults3D(gobject)
```

violinPlot	<i>violinPlot</i>
------------	-------------------

Description

Creates heatmap based on identified clusters

Usage

```
violinPlot(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  genes,  
  cluster_column,  
  cluster_custom_order = NULL,  
  color_violin = c("genes", "cluster"),  
  cluster_color_code = NULL,  
  strip_position = c("top", "right", "left", "bottom"),  
  strip_text = 7,  
  axis_text_x_size = 10,  
  axis_text_y_size = 6,  
  show_plot = NA,  
  return_plot = NA,  
  save_plot = NA,  
  save_param = list(),  
  default_save_name = "violinPlot"  
)
```

Arguments

- gobject giotto object
- expression_values expression values to use
- genes genes to plot
- cluster_column name of column to use for clusters
- cluster_custom_order custom order of clusters
- color_violin color violin according to genes or clusters
- cluster_color_code color code for clusters
- strip_position position of gene labels
- strip_text size of strip text
- axis_text_x_size size of x-axis text
- axis_text_y_size size of y-axis text

show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Correlation heatmap of clusters vs genes.

Value

ggplot

Examples

violinPlot(gobject)

visDimGenePlot	<i>visDimGenePlot</i>
----------------	-----------------------

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
visDimGenePlot(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  genes = NULL,  
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",  
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",  
  dim1_to_use = 1,  
  dim2_to_use = 2,  
  dim3_to_use = NULL,  
  show_NN_network = F,  
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",  
  network_name = "sNN.pca",  
  network_color = "lightgray",  
  edge_alpha = NULL,  
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,  
  point_size = 1,  
  genes_high_color = NULL,  
  genes_mid_color = "white",  
  genes_low_color = "blue",  
  point_border_col = "black",  
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,  
  midpoint = 0,  
  cow_n_col = 2,  
)
```



```

    cow_rel_h = 1,
    cow_rel_w = 1,
    cow_align = "h",
    show_legend = T,
    plot_method = c("ggplot", "plotly"),
    show_plots = F
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>dim3_to_use</code>	dimension to use on z-axis
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>edge_alpha</code>	column to use for alpha of the edges
<code>scale_alpha_with_expression</code>	scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>point_border_col</code>	color of border around points
<code>point_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of border around points
<code>midpoint</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>cow_n_col</code>	cowplot param: how many columns
<code>cow_rel_h</code>	cowplot param: relative height
<code>cow_rel_w</code>	cowplot param: relative width
<code>cow_align</code>	cowplot param: how to align
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend
<code>show_plots</code>	show plots

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

visDimGenePlot(gobject)

visDimGenePlot_2D_ggplot

*visDimGenePlot_2D_ggplot***Description**

Visualize cells and gene expression according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
visDimGenePlot_2D_ggplot(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes = NULL,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  network_color = "lightgray",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
  point_size = 1,
  genes_high_color = "red",
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  midpoint = 0,
  cow_n_col = 2,
  cow_rel_h = 1,
  cow_rel_w = 1,
  cow_align = "h",
  show_legend = T,
  show_plots = F
)
```

Arguments

gobject giotto object

expression_values gene expression values to use

genes	genes to show
dim_reduction_to_use	dimension reduction to use
dim_reduction_name	dimension reduction name
dim1_to_use	dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use	dimension to use on y-axis
show_NN_network	show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
scale_alpha_with_expression	scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
point_size	size of point (cell)
point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
midpoint	size of point (cell)
cow_n_col	cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_legend	show legend
show_plots	show plots

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
visDimGenePlot_2D_ggplot(gobject)
```

```
visDimGenePlot_3D_plotly
      visDimGenePlot_3D_plotly
```

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
visDimGenePlot_3D_plotly(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes = NULL,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = 3,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  network_color = "lightgray",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  point_size = 1,
  genes_high_color = NULL,
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  show_legend = T,
  show_plots = F
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>dim3_to_use</code>	dimension to use on z-axis
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)

network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
point_size	size of point (cell)
show_legend	show legend
show_plots	show plots

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
visDimGenePlot_3D_plotly(gobject)
```

visDimPlot	<i>visDimPlot</i>
------------	-------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
visDimPlot(  
  gobject,  
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",  
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",  
  dim1_to_use = 1,  
  dim2_to_use = 2,  
  dim3_to_use = NULL,  
  show_NN_network = F,  
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",  
  network_name = "sNN.pca",  
  cell_color = NULL,  
  color_as_factor = T,  
  cell_color_code = NULL,  
  select_cell_groups = NULL,  
  select_cells = NULL,  
  show_other_cells = T,  
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",  
  other_point_size = 0.5,  
  show_cluster_center = F,  
  show_center_label = T,  
  center_point_size = 4,  
  center_point_border_col = "black",  
  center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,  
  label_size = 4,  
)
```

```

    label_fontface = "bold",
    edge_alpha = NULL,
    point_size = 3,
    point_border_col = "black",
    point_border_stroke = 0.1,
    plot_method = c("ggplot", "plotly"),
    show_legend = T,
    show_plot = F,
    return_plot = TRUE,
    save_plot = F,
    save_dir = NULL,
    save_folder = NULL,
    save_name = NULL,
    save_format = NULL,
    show_saved_plot = F,
    ...
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>dim3_to_use</code>	dimension to use on z-axis
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>show_cluster_center</code>	plot center of selected clusters
<code>show_center_label</code>	plot label of selected clusters
<code>center_point_size</code>	size of center points
<code>label_size</code>	size of labels
<code>label_fontface</code>	font of labels
<code>edge_alpha</code>	column to use for alpha of the edges
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)

point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_dir	directory to save the plot
save_folder	(optional) folder in directory to save the plot
save_name	name of plot
save_format	format of plot (e.g. tiff, png, pdf, ...)
show_saved_plot	load & display the saved plot

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot or plotly

Examples

```
visDimPlot(gobject)
```

visDimPlot_2D_ggplot	<i>visDimPlot_2D_ggplot</i>
----------------------	-----------------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
visDimPlot_2D_ggplot(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
```

```

select_cells = NULL,
show_other_cells = T,
other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
other_point_size = 0.5,
show_cluster_center = F,
show_center_label = T,
center_point_size = 4,
center_point_border_col = "black",
center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
label_size = 4,
label_fontface = "bold",
edge_alpha = NULL,
point_size = 1,
point_border_col = "black",
point_border_stroke = 0.1,
show_legend = T,
show_plot = F,
return_plot = TRUE,
save_plot = F,
save_dir = NULL,
save_folder = NULL,
save_name = NULL,
save_format = NULL,
show_saved_plot = F,
...
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells

other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
other_point_size	size of not selected cells
show_cluster_center	plot center of selected clusters
show_center_label	plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size	size of center points
label_size	size of labels
label_fontface	font of labels
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
point_size	size of point (cell)
point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
show_legend	show legend

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
visDimPlot_2D_ggplot(gobject)
```

visDimPlot_2D_plotly *visDimPlot_2D_plotly*

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
visDimPlot_2D_plotly(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
```

```

    show_other_cells = T,
    other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
    other_point_size = 0.5,
    show_NN_network = F,
    nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
    network_name = "sNN.pca",
    color_as_factor = T,
    cell_color = NULL,
    cell_color_code = NULL,
    show_cluster_center = F,
    show_center_label = T,
    center_point_size = 4,
    label_size = 4,
    edge_alpha = NULL,
    point_size = 5
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>show_cluster_center</code>	plot center of selected clusters
<code>show_center_label</code>	plot label of selected clusters
<code>center_point_size</code>	size of center points
<code>label_size</code>	size of labels
<code>edge_alpha</code>	column to use for alpha of the edges
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
visDimPlot_2D_plotly(gobject)
```

```
visDimPlot_3D_plotly    visDimPlot_3D_plotly
```

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
visDimPlot_3D_plotly(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = 3,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 0.5,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
  center_point_size = 4,
  label_size = 4,
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  point_size = 1
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis

dim2_to_use	dimension to use on y-axis
dim3_to_use	dimension to use on z-axis
show_NN_network	show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
cell_color	color for cells (see details)
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
show_cluster_center	plot center of selected clusters
show_center_label	plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size	size of center points
label_size	size of labels
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
point_size	size of point (cell)

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
visDimPlot_3D_plotly(gobject)
```

visForceLayoutPlot	<i>visForceLayoutPlot</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to forced layout algorithm coordinates

Usage

```
visForceLayoutPlot(
  gobject,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  layout_name = "layout",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  show_NN_network = T,
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = F,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  point_size = 1,
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_legend = T,
  show_plot = F,
  return_plot = TRUE,
  save_plot = F,
  save_dir = NULL,
  save_folder = NULL,
  save_name = NULL,
  save_format = NULL,
  show_saved_plot = F,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	NN network to use
layout_name	name of layout to use
dim1_to_use	dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use	dimension to use on y-axis
show_NN_network	show underlying NN network
cell_color	color for cells (see details)
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
point_size	size of point (cell)
point_border_col	color of border around points

point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_dir	directory to save the plot
save_folder	(optional) folder in directory to save the plot
save_name	name of plot
save_format	format of plot (e.g. tiff, png, pdf, ...)
show_saved_plot	load & display the saved plot

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

visForceLayoutPlot(gobject)

visGenePlot	<i>visGenePlot</i>
-------------	--------------------

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
visGenePlot(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  genes,  
  genes_high_color = NULL,  
  genes_mid_color = "white",  
  genes_low_color = "blue",  
  show_network = F,  
  network_color = NULL,  
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",  
  edge_alpha = NULL,  
  show_grid = F,  
  grid_color = NULL,  
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",  
  midpoint = 0,
```

```

    scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
    point_size = 1,
    point_border_col = "black",
    point_border_stroke = 0.1,
    show_legend = T,
    cow_n_col = 2,
    cow_rel_h = 1,
    cow_rel_w = 1,
    cow_align = "h",
    axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
    custom_ratio = NULL,
    x_ticks = NULL,
    y_ticks = NULL,
    z_ticks = NULL,
    plot_method = c("ggplot", "plotly"),
    show_plots = F
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>genes_high_color</code>	color represents high gene expression
<code>genes_mid_color</code>	color represents middle gene expression
<code>genes_low_color</code>	color represents low gene expression
<code>show_network</code>	show underlying spatial network
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>show_grid</code>	show spatial grid
<code>grid_color</code>	color of spatial grid
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use
<code>midpoint</code>	expression midpoint
<code>scale_alpha_with_expression</code>	scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>point_border_col</code>	color of border around points
<code>point_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of border around points
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend
<code>cow_n_col</code>	cowplot param: how many columns

cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
axis_scale	three mode to adjust axis scale
x_ticks	number of ticks on x axis
y_ticks	number of ticks on y axis
z_ticks	number of ticks on z axis
plot_method	two methods of plot
show_plots	show plots

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot or plotly

Examples

```
visGenePlot(gobject)
```

visGenePlot_2D_ggplot *visGenePlot_2D_ggplot*

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
visGenePlot_2D_ggplot(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes,
  genes_high_color = "darkred",
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "darkblue",
  show_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  midpoint = 0,
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
  point_size = 1,
  point_border_col = "black",
```



```

    point_border_stroke = 0.1,
    show_legend = T,
    cow_n_col = 2,
    cow_rel_h = 1,
    cow_rel_w = 1,
    cow_align = "h",
    show_plots = F
  )

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>genes_high_color</code>	color represents high gene expression
<code>genes_mid_color</code>	color represents middle gene expression
<code>genes_low_color</code>	color represents low gene expression
<code>show_network</code>	show underlying spatial network
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>show_grid</code>	show spatial grid
<code>grid_color</code>	color of spatial grid
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use
<code>midpoint</code>	expression midpoint
<code>scale_alpha_with_expression</code>	scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>point_border_col</code>	color of border around points
<code>point_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of border around points
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend
<code>cow_n_col</code>	cowplot param: how many columns
<code>cow_rel_h</code>	cowplot param: relative height
<code>cow_rel_w</code>	cowplot param: relative width
<code>cow_align</code>	cowplot param: how to align
<code>show_plots</code>	show plots

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
visGenePlot_2D_ggplot(gobject)
```

```
visGenePlot_3D_plotly visGenePlot_3D_plotly
```

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
visGenePlot_3D_plotly(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes,
  show_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  show_grid = F,
  genes_high_color = NULL,
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  point_size = 1,
  show_legend = T,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  z_ticks = NULL,
  show_plots = F
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>show_network</code>	show underlying spatial network
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use

show_grid	show spatial grid
genes_high_color	color represents high gene expression
genes_mid_color	color represents middle gene expression
genes_low_color	color represents low gene expression
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
point_size	size of point (cell)
show_legend	show legend
axis_scale	three mode to adjust axis scale
x_ticks	number of ticks on x axis
y_ticks	number of ticks on y axis
z_ticks	number of ticks on z axis
show_plots	show plots
grid_color	color of spatial grid
cow_n_col	cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
visGenePlot_3D_plotly(gobject)
```

visPlot

visPlot

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
visPlot(
  gobject,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  sdimz = NULL,
  point_size = 3,
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  show_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  network_alpha = 1,
  other_cell_alpha = 0.1,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  grid_alpha = 1,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  coord_fix_ratio = 0.6,
  title = "",
  show_legend = T,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  z_ticks = NULL,
  plot_method = c("ggplot", "plotly"),
  show_plot = F,
  return_plot = TRUE,
  save_plot = F,
  save_dir = NULL,
  save_folder = NULL,
  save_name = NULL,
  save_format = NULL,
  show_saved_plot = F,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>sdimz</code>	z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimz')

point_size	size of point (cell)
point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
cell_color	color for cells (see details)
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
select_cell_groups	select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
show_network	show underlying spatial network
network_color	color of spatial network
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
show_grid	show spatial grid
grid_color	color of spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
coord_fix_ratio	fix ratio between x and y-axis
title	title of plot
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_dir	directory to save the plot
save_folder	(optional) folder in directory to save the plot
save_name	name of plot
save_format	format of plot (e.g. tiff, png, pdf, ...)
show_saved_plot	load & display the saved plot

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
visPlot(gobject)
```

visPlot_2D_ggplot	<i>visPlot_2D_ggplot</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
visPlot_2D_ggplot(
  gobject,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  point_size = 3,
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  show_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  network_alpha = 1,
  other_cells_alpha = 0.1,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  coord_fix_ratio = 0.6,
  title = "",
  show_legend = T,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  z_ticks = NULL,
  show_plot = F,
  return_plot = TRUE,
  save_plot = F,
  save_dir = NULL,
  save_folder = NULL,
  save_name = NULL,
  save_format = NULL,
  show_saved_plot = F,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>point_border_col</code>	color of border around points
<code>point_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of border around points
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells
<code>other_cell_color</code>	color of not selected cells
<code>show_network</code>	show underlying spatial network
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>show_grid</code>	show spatial grid
<code>grid_color</code>	color of spatial grid
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use
<code>coord_fix_ratio</code>	fix ratio between x and y-axis
<code>title</code>	title of plot
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_dir</code>	directory to save the plot
<code>save_folder</code>	(optional) folder in directory to save the plot
<code>save_name</code>	name of plot
<code>save_format</code>	format of plot (e.g. tiff, png, pdf, ...)
<code>show_saved_plot</code>	load & display the saved plot

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
visPlot_2D_ggplot(gobject)
```

visPlot_2D_plotly	<i>visPlot_2D_plotly</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
visPlot_2D_plotly(
  gobject,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  point_size = 3,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 0.5,
  show_network = F,
  network_color = "lightgray",
  network_alpha = 1,
  other_cell_alpha = 0.5,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  grid_alpha = 1,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  show_legend = T,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  show_plot = F
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
sdimx	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')

sdimy	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
point_size	size of point (cell)
cell_color	color for cells (see details)
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
select_cell_groups	select a subset of the groups from cell_color
show_network	show underlying spatial network
network_color	color of spatial network
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
show_grid	show spatial grid
grid_color	color of spatial grid
grid_alpha	alpha of spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
visPlot_2D_plotly(gobject)
```

visPlot_3D_plotly	<i>visPlot_3D_plotly</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
visPlot_3D_plotly(
  gobject,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  sdimz = NULL,
  point_size = 3,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 0.5,
  show_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  network_alpha = 1,
  other_cell_alpha = 0.5,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  title = "",
  show_legend = T,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  z_ticks = NULL,
  show_plot = F
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>sdimz</code>	z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimz')
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select a subset of the groups from <code>cell_color</code>
<code>show_network</code>	show underlying spatial network
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use
<code>title</code>	title of plot

show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot
point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
show_grid	show spatial grid
grid_color	color of spatial grid
coord_fix_ratio	fix ratio between x and y-axis

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
visPlot_3D_plotly(gobject)
```

visSpatDimGenePlot	<i>visSpatDimGenePlot</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

Description

integration of visSpatDimGenePlot_2D(ggplot) and visSpatDimGenePlot_3D(plotly)

Usage

```
visSpatDimGenePlot(
  gobject,
  plot_method = c("ggplot", "plotly"),
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  plot_alignment = c("horizontal", "vertical"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = NULL,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  sdimz = NULL,
  genes,
  dim_point_border_col = "black",
  dim_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
```

```

show_NN_network = F,
nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
network_name = "sNN.pca",
edge_alpha_dim = NULL,
scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
label_size = 16,
genes_low_color = "blue",
genes_mid_color = "white",
genes_high_color = "red",
dim_point_size = 3,
nn_network_alpha = 0.5,
show_spatial_network = F,
spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
network_color = "lightgray",
spatial_network_alpha = 0.5,
show_spatial_grid = F,
spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
spatial_grid_color = NULL,
spatial_grid_alpha = 0.5,
spatial_point_size = 3,
spatial_point_border_col = "black",
spatial_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
legend_text_size = 12,
axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
custom_ratio = NULL,
x_ticks = NULL,
y_ticks = NULL,
z_ticks = NULL,
midpoint = 0,
point_size = 1,
cow_n_col = 2,
cow_rel_h = 1,
cow_rel_w = 1,
cow_align = "h",
show_legend = T,
show_plots = F
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>plot_alignment</code>	direction to align plot
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>dim3_to_use</code>	dimension to use on z-axis

sdimx	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
sdimy	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
sdimz	z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimz')
genes	genes to show
dim_point_border_col	color of border around points
dim_point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
show_NN_network	show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
edge_alpha_dim	dim reduction plot: column to use for alpha of the edges
scale_alpha_with_expression	scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
label_size	size for the label
genes_low_color	color to represent low expression of gene
genes_high_color	color to represent high expression of gene
dim_point_size	dim reduction plot: point size
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
spatial_point_size	spatial plot: point size
spatial_point_border_col	color of border around points
spatial_point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
legend_text_size	the size of the text in legend
axis_scale	three modes to adjust axis scale ratio
custom_ratio	set the axis scale ratio on custom
x_ticks	number of ticks on x axis
y_ticks	number of ticks on y axis
z_ticks	number of ticks on z axis
midpoint	size of point (cell)
point_size	size of point (cell)
cow_n_col	cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot or plotly

Examples

```
visSpatDimGenePlot(gobject)
```

visSpatDimGenePlot_2D *visSpatDimGenePlot_2D*

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in ggplot mode

Usage

```
visSpatDimGenePlot_2D(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  plot_alignment = c("horizontal", "vertical"),
  genes,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  point_size = 1,
  dim_point_border_col = "black",
  dim_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_NN_network = F,
  show_spatial_network = F,
  show_spatial_grid = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  edge_alpha_dim = NULL,
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  spatial_point_size = 1,
  spatial_point_border_col = "black",
  spatial_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  midpoint = 0,
  genes_high_color = "red",
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  cow_n_col = 2,
  cow_rel_h = 1,
  cow_rel_w = 1,
```

```

cow_align = "h",
axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
custom_ratio = NULL,
x_ticks = NULL,
y_ticks = NULL,
show_legend = T,
show_plots = F
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>plot_alignment</code>	direction to align plot
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>dim_point_border_col</code>	color of border around points
<code>dim_point_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of border around points
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>edge_alpha_dim</code>	dim reduction plot: column to use for alpha of the edges
<code>scale_alpha_with_expression</code>	scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use
<code>spatial_point_size</code>	spatial plot: point size
<code>spatial_point_border_col</code>	color of border around points
<code>spatial_point_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of border around points
<code>midpoint</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>cow_n_col</code>	cowplot param: how many columns

cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_legend	show legend
dim_point_size	dim reduction plot: point size
show_plot	show plot

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
visSpatDimGenePlot_2D(gobject)
```

visSpatDimGenePlot_3D *visSpatDimGenePlot_3D*

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in plotly mode

Usage

```
visSpatDimGenePlot_3D(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  plot_alignment = c("horizontal", "vertical"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = NULL,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  sdimz = NULL,
  genes,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  label_size = 16,
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_high_color = "red",
  dim_point_size = 3,
  nn_network_alpha = 0.5,
```



```

    show_spatial_network = F,
    spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
    network_color = "lightgray",
    spatial_network_alpha = 0.5,
    show_spatial_grid = F,
    spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
    spatial_grid_color = NULL,
    spatial_grid_alpha = 0.5,
    spatial_point_size = 3,
    legend_text_size = 12,
    axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
    custom_ratio = NULL,
    x_ticks = NULL,
    y_ticks = NULL,
    z_ticks = NULL
  )

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>plot_alignment</code>	direction to align plot
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>dim3_to_use</code>	dimension to use on z-axis
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>genes_low_color</code>	color represent high gene expression (see details)
<code>genes_high_color</code>	color represent high gene expression (see details)
<code>nn_network_alpha</code>	column to use for alpha of the edges
<code>show_spatial_network</code>	show spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial/nn network
<code>spatial_network_alpha</code>	alpha of spatial network
<code>show_spatial_grid</code>	show spatial grid

spatial_grid_name name of spatial grid to use
spatial_grid_color color of spatial grid
spatial_grid_alpha alpha of spatial grid
legend_text_size text size of legend
show_legend show legend
show_plot show plot

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

visSpatDimPlot_3D(gobject)

visSpatDimPlot	<i>visSpatDimPlot</i>
----------------	-----------------------

Description

integration of visSpatDimPlot_2D and visSpatDimPlot_3D

Usage

```
visSpatDimPlot(  
  gobject,  
  plot_method = c("ggplot", "plotly"),  
  plot_alignment = NULL,  
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",  
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",  
  dim1_to_use = 1,  
  dim2_to_use = 2,  
  dim3_to_use = NULL,  
  sdimx = NULL,  
  sdimy = NULL,  
  sdimz = NULL,  
  show_NN_network = F,  
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",  
  network_name = "sNN.pca",  
  show_cluster_center = F,  
  show_center_label = T,  
  center_point_size = 4,  
  label_size = NULL,
```

```

    label_fontface = "bold",
    cell_color = NULL,
    color_as_factor = T,
    cell_color_code = NULL,
    select_cell_groups = NULL,
    select_cells = NULL,
    show_other_cells = T,
    other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
    dim_point_size = 3,
    dim_point_border_col = "black",
    dim_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
    nn_network_alpha = NULL,
    show_spatial_network = F,
    spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
    network_color = "lightgray",
    spatial_network_alpha = 0.5,
    show_spatial_grid = F,
    spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
    spatial_grid_color = NULL,
    spatial_grid_alpha = 0.5,
    spatial_point_size = 3,
    legend_text_size = 12,
    spatial_point_border_col = "black",
    spatial_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
    show_legend = T,
    axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
    custom_ratio = NULL,
    x_ticks = NULL,
    y_ticks = NULL,
    z_ticks = NULL,
    show_plot = F
  )

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>plot_alignment</code>	direction to align plot
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>dim3_to_use</code>	dimension to use on z-axis
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)

color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
select_cell_groups	select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
nn_network_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
show_spatial_network	show spatial network
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
spatial_network_alpha	alpha of spatial network
show_spatial_grid	show spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
spatial_grid_color	color of spatial grid
spatial_grid_alpha	alpha of spatial grid
legend_text_size	text size of legend
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot
plot_mode	choose the mode to draw plot : ggplot or plotly
spatial_network_color	color of spatial network

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot or plotly

Examples

```
visSpatDimPlot(gobject)
```

visSpatDimPlot_2D	<i>visSpatDimPlot_2D</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in ggplot2 mode

Usage

```
visSpatDimPlot_2D(
  gobject,
  plot_alignment = c("vertical", "horizontal"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
  center_point_size = 4,
  label_size = 4,
  label_fontface = "bold",
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  dim_plot_mode = NULL,
  dim_point_size = 1,
  dim_point_border_col = "black",
  dim_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  nn_network_alpha = 0.05,
  show_spatial_network = F,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  spatial_network_color = NULL,
  show_spatial_grid = F,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  spatial_grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_point_size = 1,
  spatial_point_border_col = "black",
  spatial_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_legend = T,
  show_plot = F,
  plot_method = "ggplot"
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>plot_alignment</code>	direction to align plot
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells
<code>other_cell_color</code>	color of not selected cells
<code>nn_network_alpha</code>	column to use for alpha of the edges
<code>show_spatial_network</code>	show spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>spatial_network_color</code>	color of spatial network
<code>show_spatial_grid</code>	show spatial grid
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use
<code>spatial_grid_color</code>	color of spatial grid
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_dir</code>	directory to save the plot
<code>save_folder</code>	(optional) folder in directory to save the plot

save_name	name of plot
save_format	format of plot (e.g. tiff, png, pdf, ...)
show_saved_plot	load & display the saved plot

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
visSpatDimPlot_2D(gobject)
```

visSpatDimPlot_3D	<i>visSpatDimPlot_3D</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in plotly mode

Usage

```
visSpatDimPlot_3D(
  gobject,
  plot_alignment = c("horizontal", "vertical"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = NULL,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  sdimz = NULL,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
  center_point_size = 4,
  label_size = 16,
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  dim_point_size = 3,
  nn_network_alpha = 0.5,
  show_spatial_network = F,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
```

```

network_color = "lightgray",
spatial_network_alpha = 0.5,
show_spatial_grid = F,
spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
spatial_grid_color = NULL,
spatial_grid_alpha = 0.5,
spatial_point_size = 3,
axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
custom_ratio = NULL,
x_ticks = NULL,
y_ticks = NULL,
z_ticks = NULL,
legend_text_size = 12
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>plot_alignment</code>	direction to align plot
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>dim3_to_use</code>	dimension to use on z-axis
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>nn_network_alpha</code>	column to use for alpha of the edges
<code>show_spatial_network</code>	show spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>spatial_network_alpha</code>	alpha of spatial network
<code>show_spatial_grid</code>	show spatial grid
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use

spatial_grid_color	color of spatial grid
spatial_grid_alpha	alpha of spatial grid
legend_text_size	text size of legend
spatial_network_color	color of spatial network
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plot

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

visSpatDimPlot_3D(gobject)

writeHMRResults	<i>writeHMRResults</i>
-----------------	------------------------

Description

write results from doHMRF to a data.table.

Usage

```
writeHMRResults(  
  gobject,  
  HMRFoutput,  
  k = NULL,  
  betas_to_view = NULL,  
  print_command = F  
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
HMRFoutput	HMRF output from doHMRF
k	k to write results for
betas_to_view	results from different betas that you want to view
print_command	see the python command

Value

data.table with HMRF results for each b and the selected k

Examples

```
writeHMRResults(gobject)
```

```
write_giotto_viewer_annotation
      write_giotto_viewer_annotation
```

Description

write out annotation data from a giotto object for the Viewer

Usage

```
write_giotto_viewer_annotation(
  annotation,
  annot_name = "test",
  output_directory = getwd()
)
```

Arguments

annotation	annotation from the data.table from giotto object
annot_name	name of the annotation
output_directory	directory where to save the files

Value

write a .txt and .annot file for the selection annotation

```
write_giotto_viewer_dim_reduction
      write_giotto_viewer_dim_reduction
```

Description

write out dimensional reduction data from a giotto object for the Viewer

Usage

```
write_giotto_viewer_dim_reduction(
  dim_reduction_cell,
  dim_red = NULL,
  dim_red_name = NULL,
  dim_red_rounding = NULL,
  dim_red_rescale = c(-20, 20),
  output_directory = getwd()
)
```

Arguments

<code>dim_reduction_cell</code>	dimension reduction slot from giotto object
<code>dim_red</code>	high level name of dimension reduction
<code>dim_red_name</code>	specific name of dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_red_rounding</code>	numerical indicating how to round the coordinates
<code>dim_red_rescale</code>	numericals to rescale the coordinates
<code>output_directory</code>	directory where to save the files

Value

write a .txt and .annot file for the selection annotation

Index

- *Topic **giotto**,
 - giotto-class, [123](#)
 - print.giotto, [170](#)
 - show,giotto-method, [179](#)
- *Topic **giotto**
 - createGiottoObject, [46](#)
- *Topic **object**
 - giotto-class, [123](#)
 - print.giotto, [170](#)
 - show,giotto-method, [179](#)
- [addCellMetadata](#), [6](#), [48](#)
- [addCellStatistics](#), [7](#), [11](#)
- [addGeneMetadata](#), [8](#), [48](#)
- [addGeneStatistics](#), [9](#), [11](#)
- [addHMRF](#), [10](#)
- [addNetworkLayout](#), [10](#)
- [addStatistics](#), [11](#)
- [adjustGiottoMatrix](#), [12](#)
- [aes_string2](#), [13](#)
- [all_plots_save_function](#), [14](#)
- [allCellCellcommunicationsScores](#), [13](#)
- [annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_2D](#), [17](#)
- [annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_3D](#), [17](#)
- [annotateGiotto](#), [15](#)
- [annotateSpatialNetwork](#), [16](#)
- [average_gene_gene_expression_in_groups](#),
[18](#)
- [binGetSpatialGenes](#), [18](#)
- [calculate_spatial_genes_python](#), [23](#)
- [calculateHVG](#), [20](#)
- [calculateMetaTable](#), [21](#)
- [calculateMetaTableCells](#), [22](#)
- [cellProximityBarplot](#), [24](#)
- [cellProximityEnrichment](#), [25](#)
- [cellProximityHeatmap](#), [26](#)
- [cellProximityNetwork](#), [27](#)
- [cellProximitySpatPlot](#), [28](#)
- [cellProximitySpatPlot2D](#), [29](#), [30](#)
- [cellProximitySpatPlot3D](#), [29](#), [32](#)
- [cellProximityVisPlot](#), [34](#)
- [cellProximityVisPlot_2D_ggplot](#), [36](#)
- [cellProximityVisPlot_2D_plotly](#), [38](#)
- [cellProximityVisPlot_3D_plotly](#), [39](#)
- [changeGiottoInstructions](#), [41](#)
- [clusterCells](#), [42](#)
- [combineMetadata](#), [44](#)
- [convertEnsemblToGeneSymbol](#), [45](#)
- [cowplot::save_plot](#), [123](#)
- [create_average_detection_DT](#), [56](#)
- [create_average_DT](#), [56](#)
- [create_cell_type_random_cell_IDs](#), [57](#)
- [create_cluster_matrix](#), [58](#)
- [create_dimObject](#), [58](#)
- [createGiottoInstructions](#), [45](#), [47](#)
- [createGiottoObject](#), [46](#), [241](#)
- [createHeatmap_DT](#), [48](#)
- [createNearestNetwork](#), [49](#)
- [createSpatialEnrich](#), [51](#)
- [createSpatialGrid](#), [52](#)
- [createSpatialGrid_2D](#), [53](#)
- [createSpatialGrid_3D](#), [54](#)
- [createSpatialNetwork](#), [55](#)
- [decide_cluster_order](#), [59](#)
- [detectSpatialPatterns](#), [60](#)
- [dimCellPlot](#), [61](#)
- [dimCellPlot2D](#), [63](#), [63](#)
- [dimGenePlot](#), [66](#)
- [dimGenePlot2D](#), [68](#)
- [dimGenePlot3D](#), [67](#), [69](#), [70](#)
- [dimPlot \(dimPlot2D\)](#), [71](#)
- [dimPlot2D](#), [71](#), [74](#), [152](#), [154](#), [157](#), [159](#), [162](#),
[164](#)
- [dimPlot3D](#), [65](#), [74](#), [75](#)
- [direction_test \(direction_test_CPG\)](#), [77](#)
- [direction_test_CPG](#), [77](#)
- [doHclust](#), [77](#)
- [doHMRF](#), [78](#)
- [doKmeans](#), [80](#)
- [doLeidenCluster](#), [81](#)
- [doLeidenSubCluster](#), [82](#)
- [doLouvainCluster](#), [84](#)
- [doLouvainCluster_community](#), [85](#)
- [doLouvainCluster_multinet](#), [86](#)
- [doLouvainSubCluster](#), [87](#)

- doLouvainSubCluster_community, 89
- doLouvainSubCluster_multinet, 90
- doRandomWalkCluster, 92
- doSNNCluster, 93
- dt_to_matrix, 94
- exportGiottoViewer, 94
- exprOnlyCellCellcommunicationScores, 95
- extended_gini_fun, 96
- extractNearestNetwork, 97
- fDataDT, 97
- filterCombinations, 98, 101
- filterCPGscores, 99
- filterDistributions, 100
- filterGiotto, 101
- find_grid_2D, 110
- find_grid_3D, 110
- find_grid_x, 111
- find_grid_y, 111
- find_grid_z, 111
- findGiniMarkers, 102
- findGiniMarkers_one_vs_all, 103
- findMarkers, 104
- findMarkers_one_vs_all, 105
- findMastMarkers, 106
- findMastMarkers_one_vs_all, 107
- findScranMarkers, 108
- findScranMarkers_one_vs_all, 109
- fish_function, 111
- fish_function2, 112
- FSV_show, 112
- GenePattern_show, 113
- general_save_function, 114
- get10Xmatrix, 115
- get_cell_to_cell_sorted_name_conversion, 120
- get_interaction_gene_enrichment, 121
- get_specific_interaction_gene_enrichment, 121
- getCellProximityGeneScores, 115
- getClusterSimilarity, 117
- getDendrogramSplits, 118
- getDistinctColors, 119
- getGeneToGeneScores, 119
- ggplot_save_function, 122
- giotto (giotto-class), 123
- giotto-class, 123
- Giotto::general_save_function, 15
- hyperGeometricEnrich, 51, 124
- iterCluster, 125
- iterLeidenCluster, 126
- iterLouvainCluster, 128
- iterLouvainCluster_community, 129
- iterLouvainCluster_multinet, 131
- kmeans_binarize, 132
- loadHMRf, 132
- make_simulated_network, 134
- makeSignMatrixPAGE, 133
- makeSignMatrixRank, 134
- mergeClusters, 135
- mygini_fun, 136
- nnDT_to_kNN, 136
- node_clusters, 137
- normalizeGiotto, 137
- OR_function2, 138
- PAGEEnrich, 51, 133, 139
- PCA, 175
- pDataDT, 140
- permutationPA, 193
- plot_network_layer_ggplot, 166
- plot_point_layer_ggplot, 166
- plot_spat_point_layer_ggplot, 168
- plotCPGscores, 140
- plotGTGscores, 141
- plotHeatmap, 143
- plotly_axis_scale_2D, 144
- plotly_axis_scale_3D, 145
- plotly_grid, 146
- plotly_network, 146
- plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap, 147
- plotMetaDataHeatmap, 149
- plotPCA, 151
- plotPCA_2D, 152
- plotPCA_3D, 152, 154, 154
- plotTSNE, 156
- plotTSNE_2D, 157
- plotTSNE_3D, 157, 159, 159
- plotUMAP, 161
- plotUMAP_2D, 162
- plotUMAP_3D, 162, 164, 164
- print.giotto, 170
- rank_binarize, 172
- rankEnrich, 51, 134, 171
- readGiottoInstructions, 172
- removeCellAnnotation, 173
- removeGeneAnnotation, 173

replaceGiottoInstructions, [174](#)
 Rtsne, [176](#)
 runPCA, [174](#)
 runSNE, [175](#)
 runUMAP, [177](#)

 select_expression_values, [179](#)
 selectPatternGenes, [178](#)
 show,giotto-method, [179](#)
 showClusterDendrogram, [180](#)
 showClusterHeatmap, [181](#)
 showCPGscores, [182](#)
 showGeneExpressionProximityScore, [183](#)
 showGiottoInstructions, [184](#)
 showGTGscores, [184](#)
 showIntExpressionProximityScore, [185](#)
 showPattern, [186](#)
 showPattern2D, [187](#), [187](#)
 showPattern3D, [188](#)
 showPatternGenes, [190](#)
 showProcessingSteps, [191](#)
 showTopGeneToGene, [191](#)
 signPCA, [192](#)
 spatCellPlot, [193](#)
 spatCellPlot2D, [196](#)
 spatDimCellPlot, [198](#)
 spatDimCellPlot2D, [202](#)
 spatDimGenePlot, [206](#)
 spatDimGenePlot2D, [208](#)
 spatDimGenePlot3D, [208](#), [210](#), [211](#)
 spatDimPlot, [213](#)
 spatDimPlot2D, [216](#), [217](#)
 spatDimPlot3D, [216](#), [220](#), [220](#)
 spatGenePlot, [224](#)
 spatGenePlot2D, [225](#), [226](#)
 spatGenePlot3D, [225](#), [227](#), [228](#)
 Spatial_AEH, [229](#)
 Spatial_DE, [230](#)
 spatPlot, [231](#)
 spatPlot2D, [234](#), [246](#)
 spatPlot3D, [234](#), [236](#), [237](#), [246](#)
 specificCellCellcommunicationScores,
 [239](#)
 split_dendrogram_in_two, [240](#)
 stitchFieldCoordinates, [48](#), [240](#)
 subClusterCells, [241](#)
 subsetGiotto, [243](#)
 subsetGiottoLocs, [243](#)

 umap, [178](#)

 viewHMRFresults, [244](#)
 viewHMRFresults2D, [245](#)
 viewHMRFresults3D, [246](#)
 violinPlot, [247](#)
 visDimGenePlot, [248](#)
 visDimGenePlot_2D_ggplot, [250](#)
 visDimGenePlot_3D_plotly, [252](#)
 visDimPlot, [253](#)
 visDimPlot_2D_ggplot, [255](#)
 visDimPlot_2D_plotly, [257](#)
 visDimPlot_3D_plotly, [259](#)
 visForceLayoutPlot, [260](#)
 visGenePlot, [262](#)
 visGenePlot_2D_ggplot, [264](#)
 visGenePlot_3D_plotly, [266](#)
 visPlot, [245](#), [267](#)
 visPlot_2D_ggplot, [270](#)
 visPlot_2D_plotly, [272](#)
 visPlot_3D_plotly, [273](#)
 visSpatDimGenePlot, [275](#)
 visSpatDimGenePlot_2D, [278](#)
 visSpatDimGenePlot_3D, [280](#)
 visSpatDimPlot, [282](#)
 visSpatDimPlot_2D, [285](#)
 visSpatDimPlot_3D, [287](#)

 write_giotto_viewer_annotation, [290](#)
 write_giotto_viewer_dim_reduction, [290](#)
 writeHMRFresults, [289](#)